

C H I N E S E  
BASIC COURSE

PHASE III

BIKONG RENYU

VOICES IN THE BLUE  
(BLUE TWO)

Lessons 1 - 20

June 1986

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE  
FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER

## PREFACE

This is a third-year text of Chinese and uses a context of military situations. It is assumed that the student will be familiar with the fundamental grammatical forms of spoken Chinese before starting Phase III. The student's vocabulary level should be equivalent to that acquired in the study of Speak Chinese and Chinese Dialogues.

Each of the twenty lessons in this text is divided as follows:

- I. VOCABULARY and NOTES
- II. STORY
- III. TRANSLATION EXERCISE

On the prerecorded student tapes which accompany this text the order of presentation is as follows:

1. Story
2. Dialogue (This does not appear in the text.)
3. Vocabulary (with examples translated in Notes)
4. Rapid Fire
5. Suggested Chinese version of the 20 English sentences which appear in the Translation exercise.

(In addition to these student tapes there are recorded Rapid Fire and Comprehension Exercises for use in the classroom.)

An explanation of these various sections, together with a suggested method of study follows:

**STORY:** There is a single story line which unfolds as the lessons progress. The central characters of the story encounter a different military situation in each lesson. These changing situations provide the opportunity for the introduction of new vocabulary.

Students are required to study each lesson in advance of the in-class periods with the teacher, utilizing the prerecorded tapes which are provided for this purpose. It is suggested that before studying the vocabulary for the new lesson, the student begin by listening to the story on the tape, referring to the story or vocabulary in romanization whenever he hears a word or passage he cannot understand in the context of the story. The student will find that as his knowledge of Chinese progressively increases, the meaning of new lexical items will be suggested to him by the context as he hears the story in continuity.

**VOCABULARY:** Following an initial hearing of the story the student should listen to the recording of the vocabulary items while the story is still fresh in his mind, with a sheet of paper covering each lexical item until voiced, and attempt to translate the meaning in association with the story. Finally, withdraw the paper covering the item and check for accuracy. After faithfully going through the vocabulary in this manner, flashcards of each lexical item should be made for additional study and practice.

DIALOGUE: After adequate study of the vocabulary listen to the Dialogue which is in the form of conversation between two or more of the characters of the story. The dialogue provides another opportunity for the student to study the vocabulary of the current lesson in context. Technical aspects of the current situation may also be revealed in this section. This Dialogue does not appear in this edition of Bìkōng Rényǔ ("Voices in the Blue," also called "Blue Two") and can be found only on the prerecorded tapes. This procedure encourages the student to assimilate the vocabulary by aural rather than visual means. The student's mastery of the Dialogue (and vocabulary) is ascertained in the small drill class by means of oral recitation and/or a short quiz. The student will also have an opportunity during these classes to clarify points in the Dialogue or story which he may not have fully understood.

TRANSLATION: The twenty English sentences appearing in this section are to be translated into Chinese, utilizing as much as possible the vocabulary of the current lesson. After making a serious effort to complete the translation the student should listen to the taped translation. This will provide an immediate check on accuracy of structure and word usage. To make a translation after listening to the tape, or to merely copy the taped translation will prove of very little value.

RAPID FIRE: These are a series of Chinese-to-English translation drills and tests. Translation of the drills, which accompany each lesson, must be completed and handed in as a homework assignment. With every two lessons a Rapid Fire test will be given in class with similar, but not identical, treatment of the vocabulary. Students are urged to simulate test conditions when doing their homework assignment, i.e., listening to the taped sentences in their entirety and avoiding a word-for-word translation. Furthermore, the fewer times it becomes necessary to listen to each sentence, the more realistic the exercise is.

COMPREHENSION TESTS (classroom only): These are a series of short stories in Chinese, approximately ten minutes in length, voiced by various Chinese instructors. During these tests the student tapes the story while scanning a prepared question sheet. The questions asked concern the pertinent points of the story. After taping of the story is complete the student completes the question sheet, at his own speed, during a prescribed time period. This type of test allows the student to utilize and to become aware of his progress in the aural comprehension skills which he has acquired in studying the story and dialogue.

In order to refresh the student's memory, this text re-introduces a sizable number of terms previously encountered in other texts. These are in each case identified by an asterisk (\*) immediately following the Chinese term. In the process of revision, a number of new entries have been added which may suggest to the student a new dimension of a word, or demonstrate its usage in a larger term or phrase. These new entries are of a supplementary

nature, and the student is not required to memorize them; thus they are placed in brackets [ ]. Some terms are only applicable to Nationalist (Taiwanese) usage, and some are only used in the PRC. These variations should be pointed out by the instructor.

1985 Reprint: "Blue Two" has been reprinted in two volumes. The GLOSSARY is also printed as a separate volume and page references refer to page numbers in volumes I and II, not to volume numbers. Pages are numbered continuously from Volume I to Volume II. Some terms which have been edited out of the text still appear in the glossary and are not required for testing purposes.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Preface	iii
Lesson	
1 Bàodào (Reporting In)	1
2 Jīběn Jiàoliàn (Basic Training)	11
3 Jūnshì Shēnghuó (Military Life)	21
4 Cānguān Jīdì (Visit to a Base)	33
5 Kōngjūn Wǎnhuì (An Air Force Party)	41
6 Cānguān Yǎnxí (Observing Maneuvers)	53
7 Zhōnggòng Guǎngbō (Chinese Communist Broadcasts)	63
8 Xiūjià Lǚxíng (Vacation Travel)	75
9 Xùnhuà (Training Lectures)	85
10 Shàngkè (Attending Classes)	97
11 Liànxí Shōutīng (Listening-in Practice)	107
12 Jīchǎng Shèbèi (Airfield Facilities)	119
13 Zhuāncháng Xùnliàn (Specialized Training)	129
14 Fúwù Kōngjūn (Serving in the Air Force)	139
15 Jīnmén Zuòzhàn (Fighting on Quemoy)	151
16 Kōngjūn Yīyuàn (An Air Force Hospital)	161
17 Chūguó Shǒuxù (Passport Procedures)	173
18 Jīngguò Rìben (Japan En Route)	185
19 Chuánshang (Aboard Ship)	195
20 Dào le Měiguó (Arriving in the U.S.)	205
Glossary (Separate Volume)	1



## Lesson 1

I. VOCABULARY

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| 1. zhànzhǎo          | RV: stand in line, stand in an orderly manner |
| 2. zhàojí (zhāojí)   | V: muster, convene, summon                    |
| 3. zhěngqí (qízhěng) | SV: orderly, neat                             |
| a. _____             |   |
| 4. zhèngfǔ           | N: government                                 |
| 5. jìnglǐ            | VO: salute, make a formal gesture of greeting |
| a. _____             |   |
| 6. quán              | BF/A: the whole, entire/all, completely       |
| a. _____             |   |
| 6.1 quánxiào         | N: the entire school                          |
| 6.2 quánchǎng        | N: the whole field or hall                    |
| 6.3 quánshìjiè       | N: the whole world                            |
| 7. quàn              | V: advise, persuade, urge                     |
| a. _____             |   |
| 8. jūn               | BF: military                                  |
| 8.1 jūnfú            | N: military uniform                           |
| 8.2 jūnrén           | N: serviceman, soldier                        |
| 8.3 jūnguān          | N: military officer                           |
| 8.4 jūnmào           | N: service cap                                |
| 8.5 jūnshi           | Att: military                                 |
| 8.6 jūntǎn           | N: military (wool) blanket                    |
| 8.7 jūnduì           | N: troops, forces                             |
| 8.8 jūnyòng          | Att: (for) military (use)                     |
| 8.9 hǎijūn           | N: Navy; sailor                               |
| 8.10 kōngjūn         | N: Air Force; airman                          |
| 8.11 lùjūn           | N: Army; soldier                              |
| 9. fā                | V: issue, transmit, emit                      |
| 9.1 fāchuqu          | RC: send out                                  |
| 9.2 fāgei            | V: issue (to)                                 |
| 10. fǎnduì           | V/N: oppose, object to/objection              |

L. 1

11. fú V: yield, assent; clothing  
11.1 fúcóng V/N: obey/obedience  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 11.2 fúwù V/N: serve/service  
b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 11.3 yīfu N: clothes
12. xuéyuán N: cadet, (military) student
13. xùnliàn V/N: train/training  
13.1 jūn(shì)xùn(liàn) N: military training  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
13. 2 shòu xùn(liàn) VO: receive training  
b. \_\_\_\_\_
14. gǎibiàn V: change  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
15. guǎnlǐ V/N: run, administer, manage/  
administration, management  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
16. guī N: rules, customs  
16.1 guīju \* N: rules, customs  
16.2 guīzé N: regulations, rules
17. guójiā N: country, nation
18. lǐng V/N: receive/collar  
18.1 lǐngjiào IE: "Could I have your advice?"  
or "Thanks for your  
advice" (a courtesy term)  
18.2 lǐngzi N: collar  
18.3 lǐngdài N: necktie  
18.4 lǐnghuā(r) N: bowtie  
18.5 lǐngshòu V: receive, accept
19. mìnglǐng V/N: order, command/order  
19.1 xià mìnglǐng VO: issue an order  
a. \_\_\_\_\_



20. bàn gōng(shì) \* VO: transact official business  
 20.1 bàngōngchù N: office  
 20.2 (bàn)gōngshì N: office
21. bào \* V/N: read off/message; news-  
 paper  
 21.1 bàogào V/N: report
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 21.2 bàodào V: report in, report for duty
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
22. běnzi N: booklet
23. bǐjì N: notes (as taken in class)  
 23.1 bǐjì běnzi N: notebook
24. bīng N: troop, soldier  
 24.1 bīnglì N: troop strength
25. shǒucè N: handbook
26. shòu V: bear, endure, undergo,  
 receive  
 26.1 shòu jiàoyu VO: receive an education  
 26.2 shòubuliǎo RE: unbearable, can't stand it
27. dìtú N: map  
 27.1 huà dìtú VO: draw a map
28. zàchéng V: approve of, support, be in  
 favor of, endorse
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
29. duì BF/M: unit (military)/group (of  
 men)  
 29.1 zǒngduì N: an air force (5th AF, etc.)  
 29.2 liánduì (kōngjūnshì) N: division  
 29.3 zhīduì N: wing  
 29.4 dàduì N: group  
 29.5 zhōngduì N: squadron  
 29.6 fēnduì (or xiǎoduì) N: flight

Note: The unit designations and English translations above are those which apply to the U.S. Air Force. Designations for units of the Chinese Air Force are currently under study.

- 29.7 duìzhǎng N: leader, unit commander

L. 1

30. tōngxùn V/N: communicate/communication

a. \_\_\_\_\_

30.1 wúxiàndiàn tōngxùn N: radio communications

30.2 ( " ) tōngxùnyuán N: radio operator

31. tóng CV/SV: and, with, together with  
(like gēn)/same, alike

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

32. zìyóu N/SV: freedom/free

32.1 Zìyóu Zhōngguó N: Free China

33. wéi V: be; do

33.1 rènwei V: think that, suppose,  
consider, assume (rightly)

33.2 yǐwéi\* V: thought that, was under the  
impression that, assumed  
(wrongly)

### NOTES

English translations of sentences used in the vocabulary of this lesson as examples of usage.

- (1) a. The cadets are all lined up.
- (3) a. His room is straightened up very neatly.
- (5) a. When you saw me why didn't you salute?
- (6) a. How many students are there in the entire class?
- (7) a. I urged him not to do that, but he wouldn't listen.
- (9) a. What all did the government issue you?
- (10) a. I neither approve of nor object to what he said.
- (11) a. Why don't you obey officers' commands?  
b. He's now serving with the New Asia Company.
- (13) a. He has received one year of military training.  
b. He is untrained.

- (14) a. He's changed plans again.
- (15) a. That school is run quite well.
- (19) a. Who issued this order?
- (21) a. I've reported this matter to the flight commander.  
 b. Tomorrow I'm going to the Air Force school to report in.
- (28) a. I don't approve of your intentions.
- (30) a. I don't think this communication came from the squadron commander.
- (31) a. He likes nothing better than playing with (the) children.  
 b. Clocks are not the same as watches.

## II. STORY.

### Bàodào

Chén Xīng-hàn shì yige Zhōngguó qīngnián, gāng cóng gāozhōng bìyè. Tā niànshū de shíhou, shòuguo jūnshì xùnliàn. Tā rènwéi kōngjūn duì guójiā fēicháng yào jǐn, suǒyǐ tā dāsuan bìyè yǐhòu jìn Kōngjūn Tōngxùn Xuéxiào, jiānglái kěyǐ zài kōngjūnlǐ fúwù.

Tā zài bìyè yǐqián, méi gēn tā fùmǔ shāngliang, jiu bǎ Kōngjūn Tōngxùn Xuéxiào de shǒuxu bànhǎole. Bìyè yǐhòu, cái gào song tāde jiā lǐtou. Tāde fùmǔ hěn bú zànchéng. Ànzhe Zhōngguorén de xiǎngfǎ, yige qīngniánrén yīngdāng bǎ tā jiānglái de jìhua xiān gào song tā fùmǔ, wènwen fùmǔ de yìsi zěnme yàng. Chén Xīng-hàn méi gēn tā fùmǔ shuō jiu juédìngle. Dāngrán tā fùmǔ yǒuyìdiǎnr bùgāoxìng. Zàishuō, tā fùqīn shì yige zuòmǎimaide, hěn xīwàng tā érzi jiānglái

bāngzhu tā zuò mǎimai, suǒyǐ búzànchéng Chén Xīng-hàn jìn Kōngjūn Tōngxùn Xuéxiào, jiu quàn Chén Xīng-hàn gǎibiàn jǐhua. Kěshi Chén Xīng-hàn xiǎng, wèi guójiā fúwù bǐ zuò mǎimai yào jìn. Tā bǎ zhège yìsi gēn tā fùmǔ tánle hěn jiǔ yǐhòu, tā fùmǔ yě jiu bùfǎnduìle. Jiéguǒ, tā jiu dào Kōngjūn Tōngxùn Xuéxiào qù bàodào qùle.

Zài Kōngjūn Tōngxùn Xuéxiào bàodào, gēn zài pǔtōng de xuéxiào bàodào bùtóng. Dìyī, yīnwei Kōngjūn Tōngxùn Xuéxiào shì yíge jūnshì xuéxiào, xuéyuán de shēnghuó dōu shì jūnrén de shēnghuó. Bàodào de shíhou, yǒu yìdiǎn xiàng zài jūnduìlǐ bàodào. Dièr, yīnwei Kōngjūn Tōngxùn Xuéxiào shì zhèngfǔ bàn de, xuéyuán yòng de dōngxì dōu shì xuéxiào fā, xuéyuán búbì zìjǐ mǎi.

Chén Xīng-hàn qù bàodào de shíhou, xiān dào bàngōngchù tián biǎo, ránhòu qù líng dōngxì. Tā língle yítào jūnfú, yíge jūnmào, yítiáo jūntǎn, hái yǒu xiē línglíngsuìsuì de dōngxì. Yě língle hěn duō shū, nàxiē shū duōbàn dōu shì gèzhǒng de guízé, shǒucè, hái yǒu xiē dìtú, zhǐ, bǐ, bìjì běnzi, shénmede. Tā língle dōngxì yǐhòu, jiu dào sùshè qùle.

Zài zhège xuéxiàolǐ, xuéyuán de shēnghuó dōu shì jūnshì guǎnlǐ. Quán xiào yígòng yǒu èrbǎiduō xuéyuán zǔzhǐchéng yíge dàduì, fēnchéng liǎngge zhōngduì. Měiyíge zhōngduì zhù yíge dàlóu. Lóu lǐtou yǒu sùshè, yǒu fàntīng, yě yǒu yíge bàngōngshì. Xuéyuán de shìqing quán shì nàge bàngōngshìlǐ de rén guǎn. Bàn shì de rén quán shì jūnrén.

Yǒude shì jūnguān, yǒude shì bīng. Yíqiè bàn shì de shǒuxu  
quán gēn jūnduì yíyàng. Bǐfang shuō, xuéyuán qù jiàn  
jūnguān, děi zài mén wàitou dàshēng de shuō "Bàogào!"  
jiànzhào jūnguān, děi jìnglǐ; shénmede.

Chén Xīng-hàn de sùshè zài Dièr Zhōngduì, Dièr Fēnduì.  
Tā dào le sùshè, bǎ lǐnglai de dōngxī shōushihǎo le, gāng  
huànshàng jūnfú, fēnduìzhǎng jiù zhào jí Dièr Fēnduì de  
xuéyuán jiǎnghuà.

Dièr Fēnduì yǒu sānshíliù ge xuéyuán. Zhèxiē rén duōbàn  
dōu méishòuguó jūnshì xùnliàn. Shòuguó jūnxùnde, dǒng  
yìdiǎn jūnduìlǐ de guīju. Tāmen zhàn zhe de yàngzi, zǒu lù de  
yàngzi, quán gēn méishòuguó jūnxùnde bùtóng. Yóuqíshì  
jiànzhào duìzhǎng shuōhuà de yàngzi, gèng kàndechulai tāmen  
shì dǒng jūnduìlǐ de guīju.

Fēnduìzhǎng zhào jí xuéyuán jiǎnghuà de shíhou, tā jiào  
xuéyuán dōu zhàn hǎo. Kěshì nàxiē rén zhàn le bàntiān,  
zhàn de háishi hěn bùzhèngqí. Tóngshí, nàxiē rén jūnfú de  
chuānfǎ, jūnmào de dàifǎ, yě bùdōu yíyàng, kàn zhe fēicháng  
kěxiào. Fēnduìzhǎng zhàn zài dāngzhōng, dàshēng de gēn dàjiā  
jiǎnghuà. Tā xiān bǎ jūnlǐ de guīju gēn dàjiā shuō le shuō,  
jiào dàjiā bǎ shǒucè hǎohǎo de kànkan, bìngqiě shuō, jūnduì  
de shēnghuó, zuì yào jìn de jiùshì fúcóng. Měiyí ge xuéyuán  
dōu děi fúcóng mìnglìng.

Chén Xīng-hàn tīngdào zhè ge dìfang, xīnlǐ xiǎng, "Cóng  
xiàn zài qǐ, wǒmende zìyóu shì méiyǒu le!"

L. 1

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. Most military schools are government run. The money they use is supplied (given) by the government.
2. After Chén Xīng-hàn reported in at the Air Force school, the school issued him many things, all of which were things that students need.
3. The military uniforms and caps that all the troops wear all look very neat.
4. There are two offices at this school, (but) none of the people working in the offices are servicemen, so while studying in this school there is no need for military control.
5. As soon as I arrive at the office, I must be sure to remove my military cap.
6. In serving the country, one must obey orders. Many people agree with me.
7. In the military school there is one group, two squadrons and six flights. There are more than 200 students in the entire school.
8. He advised me not to attend Air Force Communications School; I objected and went anyway.
9. He feels that the Air Force is most important and said that, if you wish to serve your country, it would be best to enter the Air Force.
10. When an enlisted man (soldier) sees an officer, he salutes. Sometimes the officer is busy and doesn't notice.
11. Yesterday the officer called the enlisted men (soldiers) together for a meeting. He said there was a new order that everyone must obey.
12. While I was undergoing military training, I felt there were a great many regulations. It seemed that there was no freedom. But after completing military training I felt that military training wasn't all that bad.

13. After Chén Xīng-hàn had completed his military training, he wrote a report. He said that undergoing military training was good for a person's health and spirit, and urged everyone to go take (receive) military training.
14. Yesterday I saw his notebook. It was written very neatly. I think he is a very hard-working student.
15. When I reported for duty, the school issued me quite a few notebooks, manuals (handbooks), etc., but it didn't issue me any GI blankets.
16. There are three officers and one EM in the office. They work in the Second Squadron.
17. As soon as I see someone wearing a military uniform, I know he must be a serviceman, but I don't know whether he's an officer or an enlisted man.
18. After I reported for duty I was issued a handbook. I looked it over, and there were a whole lot of regs-- what a bother! Although I agree with some of them, there are others I don't approve of.
19. All men serving in the armed forces are servicemen; all must wear uniforms, and almost all have received military training.
20. In light of (according to) the regulations of the military school, it seems that the students simply have no freedom. All orders must be obeyed, no matter what.





## Lesson 2

I. VOCABULARY

34. chángshì (chángshí)      N: common sense, general information, common knowledge, "know-how"
35. zhèngquè      SV: be accurate, correct
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
36. jīběn      Att: basic, fundamental
37. jíhé      V: assemble, rendezvous, "Fall in!"
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
38. jìlǜ      N: discipline
39. qiāng      N: gun
- 39.1 jī(guān)qiāng      N: machine gun
- 39.2 qīng jī(guān)qiāng      N: light machine gun
- 39.3 zhòng jī(guān)qiāng      N: heavy machine gun
- 39.4 bùqiāng      N: rifle
- 39.5 shǒuqiāng      N: pistol
40. jiàoliàn      V/N: train/training, instruction
- 40.1 jīběn jiàoliàn (or jīběn xùnliàn)      N: basic training
41. zhíyè      N/Att: profession, career/professional, career
42. zhǐhuī      V/N: command, control, direct/command, control, directions
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 42.1 zhǐhuīguān      N: commanding officer
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 42.2 tīng zhǐhuī      VO: obey commands, follow directions

L. 2

43. zhǔyào                                  Att: chief, essential, primary  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
44. juéduì                                  A: absolutely, positively  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
45. xíguàn                                  SV/N: accustomed to, used to/  
    habit, custom  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
46. xùnhuà                                  V/N: give training lectures/  
    training lectures  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
47. ránhòu                                  A: afterwards, then  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
48. rèxīn                                  SV: be enthusiastic, ardent  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
49. rú    BF: as, like, comparable to  
    49.1 jiǎrú                              A: if, supposing  
    49.2 rúguō\*                          A: if, suppose  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
50. kāishǐ\*                                  V: to begin, start  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
51. gēnjù                                  V/N: base(d) on, according to/  
    basis  
a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_
52. guò\*                                    V: pass through, cross over  
    52.1 guò rìzi                          VO: get by, earn a living  
    52.2 guò...shēnghuo              VO: live a...life  
a. \_\_\_\_\_

53. nénglì                                    N: ability  
       a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 53.1 yǒunénglì                            SV: able, capable
54. pào                                        N: artillery  
    54.1 pàobīng                            N: artillery troops,  
   artillery soldier  
    54.2 pàodàn                            N: artillery shell  
    54.3 dǎpào                             N: artillery (M: mén)
55. sànn\*                                    V: separate, disperse  
    55.1 jiěsàn                            V: disperse, peel off, break  
   formation (acft);  
   "Fall out!"  
       a. \_\_\_\_\_  
       b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 55.2 sànhuì\*                                VO: adjourn a meeting  
    55.3 sànkāi                             V: disperse, scatter  
       a. \_\_\_\_\_
56. shīdiào                                 V: lose, miss; lost, missing  
    56.1 shīdiào...nénglì                VO: lose the ability to...  
       a. \_\_\_\_\_
57. shǒu                                    V: observe, stick to  
    57.1 shǒu jìlǜ                          VO: observe discipline  
    57.2 shǒu guīzé                        VO: observe the regulations  
   (or rules)  
       a. \_\_\_\_\_
58. shù                                      N: device, art, magic, method  
    58.1 jìshu                              N/Att: technique, skill/  
   technical  
    58.2 měishù                            N: fine arts
59. sùdù                                    N: speed
60. suíshí                                 A: (at) any time, at all  
   times  
       a. \_\_\_\_\_

L. 2

- 61. sīlìng                      N: commandant
- 61.1 sīlìngbù                N: headquarters
  
- 62. zài X-shang                Patt: in terms of X
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
  
- 63. zuò\*                        V: make, do, be or act as
- 63.1 gōngzuò\*                V/N: work/work, job
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
  
- 63.2 zuò zhàn                VO: do battle, engage in  
                                  combat, make war
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
  
- 63.3 zuò zhǐhuīguān        VO: be a commanding officer
- 63.4 zuò gōng                VO: work, perform manual  
                                  labor
- 63.5 zuògōngde              N: worker
- 63.6 zuòshūde                N: author
  
- 64. dòng\*                      V: move, touch
- 64.1 dòngzuò                 N: movement(s), action(s),  
                                  maneuver(s)
- 64.2 zìdòng                  SV/A: automatic, voluntary/  
                                  automatically,  
                                  voluntarily
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
  
- 64.3 bèidòng                 SV: involuntary
  
- 65. wǔqì                        N: weapon
- 65.1 zìdòng wǔqì            N: automatic weapons
  
- 66. yǎn                        V: practice, perform
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
  
- 66.1 jiǎngyǎn\*                V/N: lecture/lecture
- 66.2 hiǎoyǎn                 V/N: perform, demonstrate,  
                                  show/performance,  
                                  demonstration, show
- a. \_\_\_\_\_

66. yǎn (continued)

66.3 yǎnyuán

66.4 yǎnxí

N: speaker, performer

V/N: maneuver/maneuver,  
(military) drill,  
exercise

a. \_\_\_\_\_

NOTES

- (35) a. His Beijing accent isn't very authentic.
- (37) a. Each morning we assemble at the athletic field.
- (42) a. During wartime whose command should we obey?
- b. He cannot command troops.
- c. Who is our commanding officer?
- (43) a. What is the crux of this matter?
- (44) a. Such an approach is absolutely unsatisfactory.
- (45) a. I'm still not used to American food.
- (46) a. Who's coming to give the training lecture tomorrow?
- (47) a. First we pick up our books, then go to class.
- (48) a. He's a very warm and considerate person.
- (49) a. What will we do if it rains?
- (50) a. Tomorrow we start class.
- (51) a. According to his report, Commandant Wang is already dead.
- b. Is there any basis for his remarks?
- (52) a. I don't like life in the military.
- (53) a. We have to have a commandant with command ability.
- (55) a. Salute! Fall out!
- b. They've dispersed along the east side of the road.

L. 2

- (56) a. He's already lost his combat capability.
- (57) a. There are too many students in this school who fail to observe the regulations.
- (60) a. Please come over to the house for a little fun whenever you can make it.
- (61) a. This plan is pretty good, but I'm afraid there will be technical problems involved in carrying it out.
- (63) a. We've been working very busily here.  
b. Have you ever been in combat?
- (64) a. He's using an automatic rifle.  
b. He volunteered to come and take part in the war.
- (66) a. Who gave the best performance in that movie?  
b. He is showing the students how to use automatic weapons.  
c. This afternoon we are going on combat maneuvers.

II. STORY

Jīběn Jiàoliàn

Chén Xīng-hàn zài Kōngjūn Tōngxùn Xuéxiào bàodào yǐhòu, huànshang jūnfú, kāishǐ guòzhe jūnshì xuéxiào de shēnghuó, juéde gēn cóngqián de shēnghuó wánquán bùtóng le. Cóngqián, fēicháng zìyóu, yuànyì gōngzuò, jiu gōngzuò; yuànyì xiūxi, jiu xiūxi, méiyǒu rén guǎn. Xiànzài shòu jīběn jiàoliàn, yíqiè dōu shì jūnshì guǎnlǐ, shénme dōu àn jūnshì de mìnglìng dòngzuò. Kāishǐ de shíhou, tā shízài juéde yǒu yìdiǎn bù tài xíguàn, kěshì, mànmande, yě jiu xíguàn le.

Gāng dào jūnshì xuéxiào de shíhou, měi yíge xuéyuán, dōu xūyào shòu sānzhǒng xùnliàn. Yìzhǒng shì shēntǐ de

xùnliàn, yìzhǒng shì jìshù de xùnliàn, yìzhǒng shì jīngshēn de xùnliàn. Bùguǎn zài lùjūn yě hǎo, zài kōngjūn yě hǎo, zhèsānzhǒng dōu shì zhǔyào de xùnliàn, yīnwei, rúguǒ méiyǒu zhèxiē xùnliàn, shòu xùn de xuéyuán, zài jìshùshàng, búhuì yòng jūnshì de wǔqì; zài shēnghuóshàng bùshǒu jìlǚ, nàme, jiānglái zuòqǐ zhàn lái de shíhou, dàjiā bùfúcóng sīlǐng de mìnglǐng, bùtīng zhǐhuīguān de zhǐhuī, bú àn guīju dòngzuò, zhèyàng de jūnduì, jiùshì yǒu hěn duō hěn yǒunénglì de jūnguān zhǐhuī, kǒngpà yě bùnéng dǎzhàng.

Zài jībēn jiàoliàn de jǐge yuè lǐtōu, yīnwei shíjiān tài duǎn, yīnggāi xué de dōngxī yòu tài duō, suǒyǐ, zhèxiē xuéyuán, chule xuéhuì zěnme yòng shǒuqiāng, bùqiāng, gēn qīng jīguānqiāng yǐwài, yǒu xiē biéde zìdòng wǔqì gēn dàpào, shízài méiyǒu gōngfū liànxi. Búguò, tāmen kěyǐ chángcháng tīngdào yìxiē jūnguān jiǎng gèzhǒng zìdòng wǔqì de yòngfǎ, yě kěyǐ kàndào biǎoyǎn, suǒyǐ, duìyú zhèxiē zìdòng wǔqì, tāmen yě dédào bùshǎo de jībēn chángshì.

Zài jūnshì shēnghuó lǐtōu, xùnhuà shì yíjiàn zuì píngcháng de shìqíng. Cóng fēnduìzhǎng qǐ, yìzhí dào xiàozhǎng, suíshí dōu duì zhèxiē shòu xùn de xuéyuán xùnhuà. Yǒude shì zhèngzhì xùnhuà, shì xīwàng xuéyuánmen duìyú guójiā de zhèngzhì, yǒu yìzhǒng zhèngquè de kǎnfǎ; duì wèi guójiā fúwù de gōngzuò, néng tèbié rèxīn. Yǒude xùnhuà shì jiǎng jūnduì de jìlǚ gēn jūnshì chángshì.

Zhèxiē shìqing, duìyu zhíyè jūnrén, shízài yào jīnjíe.

Zài jīběn jiàoliàn de shíhou, Chén Xīng-hàn juéde gèzhǒng yǎnxí zuì yǒuyìsi. Bífāng shuō, liànxi jíhé: wúlùn dàjiā zhèngzai zuò shénme, hūrán yìtīng yào tāmen jíhé, lìkè dōu dēi yòng zuì kuài de sùdù, bǎ jūnfú chuānhǎo, bǎ jūnmào dài hǎo, náqǐ bùqiāng hěn kuài de pǎodào wàitou qù jíhé. Zài zhèjífēn zhōng lǐtou, dàjiā juéduì bùxǔ shuōhuà. Dēng dàjiā zhànzhèngqē yǐhòu, duìzhǎng zǒuguolai, yígeyígede jiǎnchá. Ránhòu, tā yěxǔ shuō jǐjù huà, yěxǔ jiu mínglíng dàjiā lìkè jiěsàn.

Zuò zhàn yǎnxí yě shì yìzhǒng hěn hǎo de xùnliàn. Yǒude shíhou shì yíge fēnduì yǎnxí, yǒude shíhou, shì yíge zhōngduì huòshi quán xiào de jūnguān, xuéyuán dōu cānjiā yǎnxí. Bùguǎn zěnme yàng, dàjiā yǎnxí zuò zhàn de shíhou, juéduì xūyào jìde liǎngjiàn shìqing. Yíjiàn shì quán duì yíkuàir zěnme zuò zhàn, yíjiàn shì zìjǐ yíge rén zěnme zuò zhàn, juéduì bùnéng yīnwei quán duì sànkāi yǐhòu, yígeyígede bīng jiu shǐdiàole zuò zhàn de nénglì. Rúguǒ yǒu zhèyàng de qíngxíng, zhège zhàng yě jiu búbi dǎ le.

Jiǎndānde shuō, Chén Xīng-hàn rènwei zài Kōngjūn Tōngxùn Xuéxiào shòu xùn shì yíjiàn tā wàngbuliǎo de dà shìqing. Zài nàjǐge yuè lǐtou, tā cónglái méiqǐngguo bìngjià, yě bùjuéde jūnshì guǎnlǐ tài búziyóu. Gēnjù tāde kànfǎ, guójiā xiànzài shízài xūyào rèxīn gōngzuò de rén. Yě jiùshì yīnwei zhège yuángu, suǒyǐ, tā rènwei zài



kōngjūn gōngzuò shì wèi guójiā fúwù yíge zuì hǎo de jīhuì.

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. While undergoing basic training, there are really too many regulations, and everyone must observe those regulations.
2. Many kinds of automatic weapons are made in this factory. They also make hand guns, rifles, light machine guns, etc.
3. He's very warm and considerate towards his friends and also very capable at doing that type of thing. He's rich in common sense, too.
4. They're pretty fast when they assemble, but when they fall out, they're even faster.
5. The discipline of that flight is rotten--they've lost the ability to fight.
6. In wartime, the commandant's orders must be followed without fail, and discipline must be adhered to even more.
7. Yesterday the commandant told us our discipline wasn't so good, and that we should be sure to pay attention (to it) at all times.
8. We begin classes at 8:00 in the morning, and are busy straight through to the afternoon. The teachers go at a very fast pace; it's best not to go on sick call.
9. He has finished Air Force basic training, and now he hopes to join the Army voluntarily.
10. The Third Flight put on a good performance the other evening. Their movements were both precise and neat.
11. He's both skillful and capable, and found a good job as soon as he graduated.

L. 2

12. This flight is nothing to brag about on the drill field. The main reason is that the cadets in this flight are always going on sick call, so that none of their movements is precise enough.
13. According to our regulations you must not fail to observe discipline. If you can't observe discipline, you'd best not come.
14. This morning when assembling, our movements were too slow. The officer said we'd better do it again.
15. As far as technique is concerned, he's very able; his movements are perfectly precise, and his speed is very fast. He's a good troop.
16. Although he's very capable, he doesn't observe discipline, and he isn't enthusiastic about his job. The commandant says he'll never become a good troop.
17. That military school has a lot of old-fashioned machine guns and rifles, none of which can be used in combat.
18. He's always enjoyed learning about weapons. His basic general knowledge of hand guns is really terrific.
19. Yesterday the commandant told us that once the fighting begins, we absolutely cannot go on sick call whenever we feel like it.
20. Once assembled, if the command to fall out is not given, you absolutely cannot fall out.

## Lesson 3

I. VOCABULARY

67. chāi V: break open, pull down, destroy  
 67.1 chāixialai RC: tear down, tear apart  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 67.2 chāikai RC: rip open, break open  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
68. qízi N: flag, banner  
 68.1 guóqí N: national flag  
 68.2 jiàng qí VO: lower the flag, retreat  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 68.3 shēng qí VO: hoist the flag, reveille  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
69. jiāting N/Att: family/family, domestic  
 69.1 jiācháng(biàn)fàn N: home-cooked meal, home cooking, everyday fare
70. jiàng V: descend; to lower  
 70.1 jiàngluò V: land  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 70.2 jiàngdī RC: lower (altitude), descend  
 70.3 xiàngjiàng V: descend
71. jiàoshì N: classroom
72. jiējí N: steps; a grade or rank; a class (of people)
73. jiěchú V: annul, cancel, remove, release  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 73.1 jiěchú jǐngbào VO/N: give the all clear signal/  
 all clear signal

L. 3

74. zhí  
 74.1 zhíxīng V: meet, happen, worth  
 74.2 zhíxīngguān V: on duty (for the week)  
 74.3 zhírì N: duty officer (for the week)  
 V: on duty (for the day)  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 74.4 zhírìguān N: duty officer, O.D.  
 (Officer of the Day)  
 74.5 zhírìbīng N: C.Q. (Charge of Quarters)
75. jīn SV: tight, taut; urgent  
 75.1 jīnzhāng SV: tense, nervous, "up tight"  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 75.2 jīnjí SV/N: urgent, critical,  
 pressing/emergency  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 75.3 jīnjí jīngbào N: red alert (signaling an  
 imminent air raid)
76. jīnggào V/N: warn/warning  
 76.1 jīngbào N: alarm, alert  
 76.2 lā (kōngxí) jīngbào VO: sound an (air raid) alarm,  
 send out an (air raid)  
 alert  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
77. zhuāng\* V: install, load, carry (on  
 board)  
 77.1 ānzhuāng V: install  
 77.2 zhuāngbèi N: equipment
78. jǔxíng V: take place, hold (a  
 meeting, etc.)  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
79. jūnshì N: non-commissioned officer  
 (NCO)  
 79.1 shìguānzhǎng (or  
 jūnshìzhǎng) N: MSgt (E-7)  
 79.2 jìshùjūnshì N: TSgt (AF E-6)  
 79.3 cānmóujūnshì N: SSgt (AF E-5)  
 79.4 shàngshì N: SFC (Army E-6)  
 79.5 zhōngshì N: Sgt (Army F-5)  
 79.6 xiàshì N: Sgt (AF), Cpl (Army) (E-4)

80. fá V: fine, punish  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 80.1 shòufá VO: receive punishment, be fined  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
81. fāngmiàn M: aspect, side  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
82. fángyù V/N: defend, guard (against)/ defense  
 82.1 fángkōng V: air defense  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 82.2 fángkōng yǎnxí N: air defense exercise
83. fǒuzé MA: otherwise, or else (same as yàoburán)
84. hǎn V: cry out, call out, shout  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 84.1 hǎnjiào V: yell, call loudly  
 84.2 hǎnxǐng V: awaken (by calling)
85. xiànguān N: field grade officers  
 85.1 shàngxiào N: Colonel  
 85.2 zhōngxìào N: Lieutenant Colonel  
 85.3 shàoxiào N: Major
86. xián SV: idle, unoccupied, at leisure  
 86.1 xiánzhe SV: at leisure, relaxing, taking it easy  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 86.2 xiánzhe yě shì xiánzhe Ph: (Since) I have nothing to do anyway...
- 86.3 xiángōngfu N: spare time, free time  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_

L. 3

86. xián (continued)  
86.4 xiántán V: chat, "shoot the breeze,"  
have a gab session
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
87. rènzhēn SV/A: conscientious/  
conscientiously
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
88. kǒulìng N: verbal command (in a  
drill), (military)  
password
89. mǎnyì SV: satisfied (with)
90. mùdì N: aim, object, purpose, goal
91. pǎobù VO: run; double-time march (in  
drill), on the double
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
92. bīngshì N: enlisted man (EM)  
92.1 shìbīng N: enlisted man (EM)  
92.2 yìděngbīng N: A1C, Airman First Class  
(E-3)  
92.3 èrděngbīng N: Amn, Airman (E-2)  
92.4 sānděngbīng N: AB, Airman Basic (E-1)  
92.5 xīnbīng N: a recruit
93. bùgào N: announcement  
93.1 bùgàobǎn N: bulletin board
94. shēng V: raise; rise, ascend  
94.1 shēngjí V: be promoted (in one's  
occupation)  
94.2 shēngbān V: be promoted (in school)  
94.3 shēngzuò V: take the chair (witness  
stand, seat of honor,  
etc.)  
94.4 shēngjiàngjī (or  
diàntī) N: elevator, lift
95. shí N: time; when
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 95.1 zhànshí N: wartime

95. shí (continued)  
95.2 píngshí N/MA: peacetime, normal times/  
normally, ordinarily
96. shōuyīnjī\* N: radio receiver
97. shù(r)  
97.1 shùmù N: number  
97.2 shǎoshù N: minority  
97.3 jíshǎoshù N: extremely few, small  
minority  
97.4 duōshù N: majority  
97.5 dàduōshù N: great majority
98. dài V: wait for or upon, treat  
98.1 zhāodài V/N: receive, welcome,  
entertain/reception,  
entertainment  
98.2 dàiyu N: pay and benefits,  
treatment (any form  
of recompense or  
consideration for  
services rendered)  
98.3 děngdài V: wait (for)  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
99. dēnghuǒ guǎnzhì N: blackout
100. duìxíng N: formation
101. zìyóu huódòng N: free period (in school),  
recess
102. wèiguān N: company grade officers  
102.1 shàngwèi N: Captain  
102.2 zhōngwèi N: First Lieutenant  
102.3 shàowèi N: Second Lieutenant
103. yán SV: strict, stern, severe  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 103.1 yánjīn SV: strict, rigorous  
(regulations, etc.)  
103.2 yánzhòng SV: serious, of grave  
importance  
103.3 yánfá N: severe punishment

L. 3

104. yíxià\*  
104.1 yìqǐ

NU-M: a moment, a while; once  
A: together (same as yíkuàir)

a. \_\_\_\_\_

104.2 yìdiǎn

N: a little, a bit, some  
(same as yìdiǎnr)

NOTES

- (67) a. He tore down (disassembled) the radio on the aircraft.  
b. He tore open the package.
- (68) a. What time in the afternoon is retreat?  
b. Every morning there is reveille. (Or: The flag is hoisted each morning.)
- (70) a. Where did that aircraft land?
- (73) a. The all clear has already been sounded.
- (74) a. I'm on duty today.
- (75) a. Life is very tense during basic training.  
b. The situation is critical.
- (76) a. When there is an air raid alert, everyone is very tense.
- (78) a. Yesterday we held an air defense exercise.
- (80) a. He didn't punish me.  
b. He didn't observe traffic regulations, so he was punished (or fined).
- (81) a. When both sides are fully present, we can get on with the meeting.
- (82) a. Those objects are all used for air defense.
- (84) a. Last night there was someone shouting in the street.
- (86) a. He's taking it easy now.



- (86) b. We don't have any spare time.  
 c. We like to have a chat in the evening.
- (87) a. He's very conscientious in doing things.
- (91) a. Running is very beneficial to one's health.
- (95) a. One shouldn't wear a hat at mealtime.
- (98) a. Wait a moment--he'll be right back.
- (103) a. Our regulations are very strict.
- (104) a. We came together.

## II. STORY

### Jūnshì Shēnghuó

Chén Xīng-hàn zài Kōngjūn Tōngxùn Xuéxiào shòu jīběn jiàoliàn yǐjīng hǎojǐge lǐbài le. Tāmen yìqǐ shòu jūnshì xùnliàn de xuéyuán hěn duō. Duōshù de xuéyuán dōu shì dìyíci guò jūnshì shēnghuó, suǒyǐ juéde gēn jiātfǎng shēnghuó yǒu hěn dà de fēnbié. Búlùn zuò shénme dōu dēi ànzhe yídìng de guízé, bìngqiě dàiyu yě búsuàn tài hǎo, gēn yìděngbīng de dàiyu yíyàng. Chúfánglǐ zuò de fàn yě méiyǒu jiāchángfàn nàme hǎochī, suǒyǐ tāmen gāng kāishǐ de shíhou, juéde shēnghuó yòu jǐnzhāng, yòu bùshūfu.

Chén Xīng-hàn yǒu yíwèi péngyou jiào Cài Jīng-shēng. Tāmen liǎngge rén dōu zài dièr fēnduì. Cài Jīng-shēng chángcháng shuō: "Wǒ zài jiālǐ zhǔ de shíhou, zǎoshang kěyǐ duo shuì yíhuǐr, ránhòu tīngzhe shōuyīnjī mǎnmǎnrde qǐlai, mǎnmǎnrde shōushi, duō shūfu a! Xiànzài kě bùchéngle. Guízé yòu duō yòu yán. Dòngzuò hái dēi tèbié kuài."

Chén Xīng-hàn yě juéde tā shuōde hěn duì.

Xuéxiào yǒu shíhou ràng xuéyuánmen liànxí pǎobù, yǒu shíhou liànxí gèzhǒng duìxíng. Cài Jīng-shēng duì zhè fāngmiàn de xùnliàn dōu hěn yǒuxìngchū. Chúle zhèxiē yǐwài, tā hái xǐhuan shōushi shōuyīnjī. Tā kěyǐ bǎ shōuyīnjī chāikāi, ránhòu zài zhuāngshàng. Tā chángcháng gēn Chén Xīng-hàn zài zìyóu huódòng de shíjiān yìqǐ shōushi shōuyīnjī, huòshi xiántán. Suǒyǐ tāmen liǎngge rén chéngle hǎo péngyou.

Cài Jīng-shēng hěn xǐhuan hǎn kǒulǐng. Kěshi yīnwei xuéxiào měitiān dōu yǒu yídìng de rén hǎn, suǒyǐ tā hǎn de jīhuì bùduō. Chén Xīng-hàn wèn tā wèishénme yuànyǐ hǎn kǒulǐng, tā shuō hǎn kǒulǐng hěn yǒuyìsi. Yīnwei shēng qí gēn jiàng qí de shíhou, búlùn shì wèiguān huòshi xiàoguān, dōu děi tīng tāde kǒulǐng zuò shì. Chén Xīng-hàn juéde hěn yǒuyìsi.

Cài Jīng-shēng bùxǐhuan fángkōng yǎnxí, yě bùxǐhuan jīnjí jíhé. Yóuqíshi yìjǔxíng fángkōng yǎnxí de shíhou, tā jiù zhāojí le. Yīnwei jiěchú jǐngbào gēn jīnjí jǐngbào de shēngyīn, tā zǒng shì fēnbuqīngchū. Duìyu dēnghuǒ guǎnzhì, tā yě juéde bú tài xíguàn. Tā shuō, tā zài jiālǐ de shíhou, yèlǐ yídìng děi kāizhe diàndēng, fǒuzé jiù shuǐbuzháo.

Tā yě bùxǐhuan zài jiàoshìlǐ shàng kè. Biéren dōu xiě bǐjì, kěshì tā bùxiě. Tā búshi shuǐjiào, jiùshi xiǎng

gēn biéren xiántán. Chén Xīng-hàn cháng gàosu tā:  
 "Zhíxīngguān zài hòutou kànzhe nǐ ne, bié shuǐ le." Yǒu  
 yíci shàng kè de shíhou, tā dàile yí fù hēi yǎnjǐng, zhèyàng  
 shéi yě kàn bu qīng chu tā shì bushi shuǐjiào le. Kěshi dào le  
 xià kè de shíhou, biéren dōu zǒu le, tā méizǒu. Tā hái zài  
 nàlǐ jiēzhe shuǐ ne. Zhíxīngguān jiù bǎ tā jiàoxǐng le, duì  
 tā shuō: "Ànzhe xuéxiào de guīzé, shàng kè de shíhou, búdàn  
 bùxǔ shuǐjiào, bìngqiě yě bù yīng gāi suíbiàn dài hēi  
 yǎnjǐng. Nǐ dāngrán yě zhīdao, shòu jūnshì xùnliàn de mùdì,  
 jiùshì xīwang nǐmen yǒu yíge hǎo xíguàn. Búlùn zài píngshí,  
 huòshì zhànshí dōu yīng dāng rènzhēn. Yào shì nǐ zài píngshí  
 shàng kè de shíhou, jiù búrènzhēn, nàme dào le zhànshí yě  
 jiù róngyì mǎmǎhūhū le. Jīntiān nǐ suàn shì tóuyìhuí, wǒ  
 bùfá nǐ, xiān jǐnggào nǐ yíci. Yǐhòu shàng kè de shíhou,  
 yào tèbié zhùyì."

Cài Jīng-shēng tīng le zhíxīngguān de jǐnggào yǐhòu,  
 juéde zhíxīngguān shuō de huà, yòu kèqì yòu yǒu dào lǐ. Tā  
 jiù gēn Chén Xīng-hàn liǎngge rén, bǎ xuéxiào de guīzé  
 zìxíde yánjiū le yíxià, bìngqiě dōu ànzhe guīzé rènzhēnde  
 zuò. Méiyǒu duōjiǔ tāmen jiù juéde jūnshì shēnghuó hěn  
 yǒuyìsi le, zhíxīngguān zìrán hěn mǎnyì. Hòulái, yǒu yìtiān,  
 zài bùgàobǎnshang yǒu yìzhāng xīn de bùgào. Bùgào de yìsi  
 shì: Cài Jīng-shēng gēn Chén Xīng-hàn fēicháng shǒu jìlǜ,  
 bìngqiě yě hěn fúcóng mínglǐng, shì hěn hǎo de xuéyuán.

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. During break time yesterday afternoon, most of the students stayed there talking, everyone was having so much fun.
2. The minute I hear the command to assemble in the morning, I go to assembly; as soon as I hear someone shout "salute!", I salute.
3. Family life and military life are really different; everything in military life must be done according to the regulations. I feel a little uptight.
4. I don't like idle conversation. Whenever I have free time, I read novels or listen to a radio (receiver).
5. The students in our flight were planning to have dinner together this Saturday, (but) nobody knew what to eat. Finally we used a hand count to decide. The minority went along with the majority decision to eat everyday food.
6. When getting out of bed (veille) and lowering the flag (retreat), our formation wasn't so orderly; consequently, we were punished.
7. There is a news bulletin on the bulletin board that says Zhou En-lai is not studying conscientiously, and warns him that he will have to watch his ways.
8. I think the pay and benefits of company grade officers are very good, but the pay and benefits of field grade officers are even better.
9. The O.D. of the week is very strict--no matter how well we do during air defense drills, he's never satisfied.
10. He's a Buck Sergeant who takes his work very seriously. Should he go to another office, he always runs. I've never seen him act lazy.
11. If during peacetime we conscientiously practice air defense drills, then when wartime comes we can't possibly feel tense.

12. My car stopped in an intersection, and a policeman wanted to ticket me. I told him, "I have engine trouble--if you can fix it, then take it apart and have a look."
13. The sound of an air raid alarm is frightening, and the sound of an imminent attack alarm is even more frightening. Some people pray during red (imminent attack) alerts. Everyone hopes to hear the "all clear" sounded.
14. Miss Yang comes from a very good family. Her father is an Air Force Colonel and his pay and benefits are quite good. Her mother is presently doing church work. They are both very friendly. Miss Yang is very diligent in her studies, and very warm and considerate toward her friends.
15. At the coast I saw a steamship with the national flag flying from the bow. There was another flag at the stern.
16. I was on duty last week. The commanding officer said to me, "We've had air defense drills recently--you must pay special attention during blackouts."
17. Air defense drills are particularly important. Even though it is peacetime, as soon as one hears the alarm sounded he must do his part conscientiously. Otherwise, the object of air defense exercises is lost.
18. I've had a severe headache for the past few days. When the situation got extremely urgent, my mother took me to the hospital. First I got a shot, then had a long rest. Before very long I was okay.
19. A bunch of us dismantled a lot of items from the machine gun; later on, we wanted to reinstall them, but nobody knew how. We all got punished.
20. I used to know very little about the general body of knowledge common in the military field, but whenever I have the time, I study, and now I know quite a lot.



## Lesson 4

## I. VOCABULARY

105. zhàdàn N: bomb
106. chádǎn N: snacks, refreshments (chá gēn diǎnxīn)
107. zhànshì N: soldier
108. jīchǎng N: airfield  
 108.1 jīshēn N: fuselage  
 108.2 jītóu N: nose (aircraft)  
 108.3 jīcāng N: cockpit  
 108.4 jīwěi N: tail (aircraft)  
 108.5 jīyì N: wing (aircraft)
109. jīzhǒng N: type of aircraft  
 109.1 zhàndòujī N: fighter  
 109.2 jiàoliànjī N: trainer  
 109.3 hōngzhànjī N: bomber  
 109.4 liànxíjī N: trainer  
 109.5 pēnshèjī N: jet aircraft  
 109.6 pēnshèzhàndòujī N: jet fighter
110. jīdì N: (military) base
111. qǐfēi \* V: take off
112. qìxiàng N: weather  
 112.1 qìxiàngtái N: meteorological observatory, weather station
113. qìyóu N: gasoline  
 113.1 qìyóuzhàn N: gasoline station  
 113.2 qìyókù N: gasoline depot
114. jià \* M: measure for aircraft
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- [114.1 jiàcì] N: sortie (one mission or attack by a single plane)
115. jìnzhǐ (see jìnqū) V: prohibit, restrict
116. zhōuwéi V/N: surround; all around/  
 periphery, circumference  
 116.1 sìzhōuwéi PW: on all (four) sides

## 116.1 sīzhōuwéi (continued)

- a. \_\_\_\_\_
117. chūfā V: start, set out, set forth
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
118. jùlèbù N: club, guild, association  
118.1 jūnguān jùlèbù N: officers' club
119. qū N: place, region  
119.1 jìngū N: "off limits", restricted area  
119.2 dìqū N: area, section, district  
119.3 wēixiǎnqū N: danger zone
120. jūnhuǒ N: munitions  
120.1 jūnhuǒkù N: munitions dump
121. xiū V: repair, build  
121.1 xiūgǎi V: revise, amend  
121.2 xiūli V: fix, repair, work on, overhaul
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 121.3 xiūlizhàn N: repair depot
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 121.4 xiūlichǎng N: repair depot, garage
122. huáxíng V: taxi  
122.1 huáchu(lai) RC: taxi out
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 122.2 huádao V: taxi to  
122.3 huázǒu V: taxi
123. rényuán N: personnel  
123.1 dìmiàn gōngzuò rényuán (dìngqínzǔ) N: ground crew
124. kù N: storehouse, warehouse  
124.1 fēijīkù N: hangar
125. gōnglǐ\* M: kilometer, (1000 meters, 0.62 miles)



125. gōnglǐ (continued)  
 125.1 gōngchǐ (or mǐ) M: meter (39.37 inches, 3.28 feet)  
 125.2 gōngfēn (or límǐ) M: centimeter  
 125.3 gōnglí (or háomǐ) M: millimeter
126. lúndào X Ph: it is X's turn
127. máobing N: flaw, ailment, defect, malfunction
128. chū máobing VO: develop a malfunction, go out of order, "something is wrong with ..."
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
129. mìmì (bìmì) SV/N: be secret/secret, secrecy  
 129.1 jūnshì mìmì N: military secret
130. miànjī (miànjī) N: area (by dimension)
131. pǎodào N: runway
132. tái BF/M: stage, platform, tower/  
 machine  
 132.1 zhǐhuìtái N: control tower  
 132.2 tǎtái N: control tower
133. děngděng N: and so on, etc. (same as shénmede)
134. dìmiàn N: ground
135. tōngxíngzhèng N: (access) pass
136. wǎng N: net, network  
 136.1 tiěsīwǎng N: barbed wire, wire entanglement  
 136.2 wúxiàndiàn N: radio communications  
 tōngxùnwǎng network  
 136.3 yúwǎng N: fish net
137. wēixiǎn N/SV: danger/dangerous; critical (injury or illness)
138. yóuxiāng N: fuel tank  
 138.1 yùbèi yóuxiāng N: reserve fuel tank

NOTES

- (114) a. Three aircraft took off.
- (116) a. Parking is prohibited on all four sides of the school.
- (117) a. Set out tomorrow morning.
- (121) a. Do you know how to repair automobiles?  
b. This repair depot repairs aircraft with both quality and speed.
- (122) a. The aircraft has/have taxied out.
- (128) a. My receiver has developed a malfunction.
- (137) a. That is a very critical ailment.

II. STORY

Cānguān Jīdì

Chén Xīng-hàn zài Kōngjūn Tōngxùn Xuéxiào shòule jǐge yuè de jīběn jiàoliàn. Yǒu yìtiān wǎnshang jíhé de shíhou, tāmen nàyi fēnduì de fēnduìzhǎng gěi tāmen bàogào shuō, dièrtiān zǎoshang lúndào tāmen nàyi fēnduì qù cānguān yíge kōngjūn jīdì. Dàjiā tīngle dōu fēicháng gāoxìng. Xīng-hàn xiǎo de shíhou dào nàli qùguo, zhīdao nà shì quán guó zuì dà de yíge jīdì, cháng xiǎng jìnqù wánwánr, kěshi nàge shíhou tā hái shì yíge xiǎo háizi, suǒyǐ bùnéng dào jīdì lītou qù cānguān. Tā jiu cháng zài jīdì wàitou kàn. Nàge jīdì de miànji shízài tài dà, chúle yìxiē fángzi yìwài, hái yǒu hěn duō hěn cháng hěn cháng de pǎodào. Tā chángcháng xīwang yǒu yìtiān néng dào nàge jīdì qù zuò shì.

Dièrtiān chīwánle zhōngfàn, fēnduìzhǎng zhāojí dàjiā

zài tīyuguǎn ménkǒur jíhé. Fēnduìzhǎng gēn dàjiā shuōle  
jǐjù huà, tāmen jiù shàngle yíliàng qìchē chūfāle.

Xuéxiào lí jīdì búsuàn tài yuǎn, dàgài yǒu èrshiduō  
gōnglǐ, búdào yíge zhōngtóu jiù dàoile. Jīdì dāmén nàli yǒu  
yíwèi zhànshì, wèn tāmen shì cóng nǎlǐ lái de. Fēnduìzhǎng  
shuō, tāmen shì Kōngjūn Tōngxùn Xuéxiào dièr zhōngduì  
dièr fēnduì de xuéyuán, jīntiān dào jīdì lái cānguān,  
yǐjīng gēn jīdì de Lǐ Shàoxiào shuōhǎo le. Nàwèi zhànshì  
jiù gěi Lǐ Shàoxiào de bàngōngchù dǎle yíge diànhuà.  
Nàbiānr shuō, Lǐ Shàoxiào zài Jūnguān Jùlèbù dēngzhe tāmen  
ne, qǐng tāmen lìkè jiù qù ba.

Qìchē jīnle dāmén, zǒule yìhuǐr, Xīng-hàn kànjian  
zuǒbiān yǒu yíge hěn dà de fēijīkù, yǒu yíjià fēijī zhèng  
cóng kùlǐ huáchulai, huádào qìyóuzhàn qù. Xīng-hàn yòu  
wàng yòubiān yíkàn, kànjian lí tāmen wǔbǎiduō gōngchǐ de  
dìfang yǒu hǎojítiáo hěn cháng de pǎodào, yǒu yíjià  
pēnshèjī zhèng yào qǐfēi, shēngyin, dàjǐle.

Dàoile jùlèbù, Lǐ Shàoxiào zài mén wàitou dēngzhe  
tāmen ne, yíkànjian tāmen láiile, jiù shuō: "Huānyíng,  
huānyíng."

Lǐ Shàoxiào dàizhe tāmen qù cānguān jīchǎng de tǎtái,  
qìxiàngtái, dēngdēng dìfang. Yìhuǐr, tāmen dàoile yíge  
dìfang, sìzhōuwéi dōu yǒu tiěsīwǎng, ménkǒur guàle yíkuài  
páizi, shàngmian xiězhe "Jīnqū, wēixiǎn," sìge zì. Dàjiā  
bùzhīdao zhè lǐtou yǒu xiē shénme dōngxì. Yǒude rén cāi

L. 4

zhè lǐtōu yíding shì jūnhuǒkù, yǒude rén cāi shì qìyóukù.  
Xīng-hàn jiù wèn Lǐ Shàoxiào, lǐtōu dōu yǒu xiē shénme?  
Lǐ Shàoxiào xiàole xiào, shuō: "Duìbuqǐ, zhè shì jūnshì  
mìmi, wǒ bùnéng gàosu nǐmen." Yǒu yíge xuéyuán wèn Lǐ  
Shàoxiào shénme yǎngr rén cái néng jìnqu. Lǐ Shàoxiào shuō,  
jìnqu de rén yíding děi yǒu tōngxíngzhèng.

Hòulái, Lǐ Shàoxiào dài tāmen qù kàn yíjià fēiji.  
Nàjià fēiji de jīshēn bǐ tāmen xuéxiào de jiàoliànjī  
dàde duō. Kěshi jīyì de xiàtōu yǒu liǎngge dōngxī, kànzhe  
xiàng zhàdàn. Hòulái, Lǐ Shàoxiào shuō, nà shì yíjià  
pēnshèzhàndòujī. Jīyì xiàtōu nàliǎngge dōngxī búshì  
zhàdàn, shì yùbèi yóuxiāng. Dàjiā cóng jītóu dào jīwēi  
zìzìxìxìde kànle yíkan. Měi rén hái dào jīcānglǐ zuòle  
yìhuīr.

Tāmen kànwánle fēiji, huí jùlèbù de shíhou, jīngguo  
yíge dìfang, kànjian yǒu hèn duō dìmiàn gōngzuò rényuán zài  
nàli xiūlǐ yíjià fēiji. Lǐ Shàoxiào shuō: "Wǒmen zhèli de  
fēiji yǒu nàme duō, měitiān chū máobìng de shízài bùshǎo.  
Zhè jiùshì wǒmen xiūlǐ fēiji de dìfang.

Tāmen dào le jùlèbù, Lǐ Shàoxiào yíjīng ràng rén yùbèile  
yìxiē chádiǎn zhāodài tāmen. Dàjiā dōu juéde cānguān de hěn  
mǎnyì. Chīwánle chádiǎn, dàjiā gēn Lǐ Shàoxiào shuōle  
xièxie, jiù yào zǒule, Xīng-hàn juéde jùlèbù de chádiǎn wèir  
tèbié hǎo, suǒyǐ jiù wèn Lǐ Shàoxiào shì búshì jùlèbù de  
chúzi zìjǐ zuò de. Lǐ Shàoxiào shuō: "Duìbuqǐ, zhè shì

jūnshì mìmì, wǒ bùnéng gào song nǐ." Dàjiā dōu xiàole.

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. The area of that base is very large, and the runway is very long, too. I hear there are a lot of fighter aircraft at that base.
2. If you don't have a pass, you absolutely can't get in. Since there are many military secrets here, the whole place has become a restricted area.
3. A lot of underground agents (dìxià gōngzuò rényuán) came to visit, and we prepared a simple meal in the officers' club in their honor.
4. That jet aircraft has developed a malfunction. I think it definitely should be repaired prior to take off.
5. I phoned him before setting out, and when I arrived he was already waiting for me at the main gate of the base. He took me on a tour of the meteorological station; he told me, "There aren't any military secrets there."
6. Why is the munitions dump encircled (quānqilai) on all four sides by barbed wire? Do you think there is danger there?
7. Both the nose and tail of that aircraft have developed malfunctions. They must be repaired quickly, otherwise it would be too dangerous.
8. That trainer aircraft taxied out from the hangar to the refueling station; probably it was to refuel.
9. How long and how wide is that runway?
10. Anybody can go to that club. All workers at the field can go, regardless of whether they are officers or enlisted men.
11. There are quite a few windows on the fuselage of that trainer aircraft; on the wings are two national flags; and on the tail, a good many symbols.

L. 4

12. This aircraft has just returned from the refueling station, and the fuel tanks and reserve tanks are both filled up.
13. I've never toured the control tower. Somebody said there were secrets in the tower, and it was therefore a restricted area.
14. Yesterday my turn came to do a practice flight. I sat there in the cockpit for quite a while, but never was able to take off. It wasn't any malfunction in the aircraft--I was just too nervous.
15. I asked Colonel Zhang how many aircraft there were on this base. He said that was a military secret, and he couldn't tell me.
16. There aren't any signs outside the fuel dump, but there is barbed wire all around it. I don't know if that's a restricted area.
17. That club is pretty nice--all the personnel who work in the control tower and weather station go there for snacks.
18. The nose and tail of an aircraft are equally important. No matter where a malfunction occurs, it must in each instance be repaired.
19. A munitions dump is a restricted area and, I would think, certainly dangerous. Even if I had a pass, I wouldn't venture into one.
20. First he accompanied me on a tour of the field; later on he entertained me at the club, where I had a lot to eat; I was delighted.

## Lesson 5

I. VOCABULARY

139. zhà    V: burst, explode, blow up  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 139.1 zhàhuī                                   V: blow up  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 139.2 zhàyào                                 N: explosives, dynamite
140. zhànzhēng                               N: war  
 140.1 zhànshì                               N: warfare  
 140.2 zhàndòu                               V/N: battle, combat  
 140.3 Dièrcì Shìjiè                         N: World War II  
        Dàzhàn
141. jiàshǐ                                     V: pilot  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 141.1 jiàshǐyuán                            N: pilot
142. qiáo                                        N: bridge  
 142.1 qiáoliáng                             N: bridge
143. jiémù                                     N: program, schedule
144. qīnqi                                     N: relatives; relation
145. qīngzhù                                  V: celebrate  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 145.1 qīngzhùhuì                            N: celebration (gathering, party)
- 145.2 guóqīng                                N: the National Day celebration (of a country)
146. zhuā                                      V: scratch, grasp in the hand, grab, apprehend

L. 5

146. zhuā (continued)

146.1 zhuāzhu

RC: hold something firmly in  
the hand, catch,  
apprehend

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

147. zhǔnbèi\*

V: prepare to, get ready to

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

148. xuǎn

V: select, choose, elect,  
vote for

148.1 xuǎnjǔ

V/N: vote for, elect by ballot/  
election

a. \_\_\_\_\_

149. huì

V/N: meet with, assemble/  
meeting, conference,  
association, club,  
fraternity, union, lodge,  
etc.

149.1 huìyì

V/N: confer, meet/conference,  
meeting

149.2 wǎnhuì

N: evening party, soiree

[149.3 yuēhuì]\*

N: prearranged meeting,  
appointment, date

150. gǔ

N: drum

150.1 gǔzhǎng

V/N: clap the hands, applaud/  
applause

150.2 dǎ gǔ

VO: beat a drum

[150.3 gǔlì]

V: inspire, encourage

[150.4 gǔdòng]

V: urge, encourage

151. guīmó

N: scale, magnitude

151.1 xiǎo guīmó

N: small scale

151.2 dà guīmó

N: large scale

152. lǎobǎixìng

N: common people, man in the  
street, civilians (lit.  
old hundred lineages)

153. mái

V: bury, conceal



154. nèiróng N: content, substance of something, subject matter
155. bài V: be defeated, be overcome, lose
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 155.1 dǎbài RC: defeat
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
156. pāishǒu (pāizhǎng) VO: applaud, clap (hands)
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
157. biǎoshì V/N: show, express, indicate, demonstrate, make (something) clear/sign, indication
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
158. shòu shāng VO: be wounded, receive injury
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
159. dāying V: agree (to), consent (to); respond (to), accept (invitation, request)
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
160. dài biǎo V/N: represent (officially)/ representative, delegate
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 160.1 dài biǎo tuán N: delegation
161. tài du N: attitude, manner
162. dān wèi N: unit (of measurement, of an organization, etc.)

L. 5

163. dàngzuo V: represent, stand for  
 163.1 bă A dàngzuo B V: (mis)take A for B, consider A to be B, look upon A as B  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
164. dí rén N: enemy  
 164.1 dí jī N: enemy plane, HAC (Hostile Air Craft)  
 164.2 dí jūn N: enemy forces
165. diǎn \* N: point, dot, decimal point  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
166. tí V: raise; mention, bring up  
 166.1 tí chāng V: promote, advocate  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 166.2 tí chū lái RC: raise, bring up (question, etc.)  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 166.3 tí yì V: propose, suggest, make a motion  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- [166.4 tí gāo] RC: raise, heighten, increase (vigilance, etc.)  
 [166.5 tí qián] V: move ahead of schedule  
 A: early, ahead of time
167. tiào V: jump; dance  
 167.1 tiào wǔ VO: dance  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 167.2 tiào wǔ huì N: a dance



NOTES

- (139) a. Yesterday enemy planes bombed Shanghai.  
b. Enemy aircraft blew up that house.
- (141) a. Can you pilot an aircraft (fly planes)?
- (145) a. What are they celebrating?
- (146) a. Last night we caught a burglar.  
b. He was apprehended by the police.
- (147) a. What time are you preparing to set out?  
b. We're all ready.
- (148) a. We'll have to elect someone to act as a representative.
- (155) a. Who lost World War II?  
b. This thing is too old (worn out)--the colors are all shot (ruined, faded).  
c. Germany wanted to defeat the Soviets.
- (156) a. He applauded three times during the concert.
- (157) a. He expressed disapproval.
- (158) a. I've been wounded three times.
- (159) a. I've promised to do this for him.  
b. He's calling you--why don't you respond?
- (160) a. Whom do you represent?  
b. He is our delegate (representative).
- (163) a. He mistook that Englishman for a Frenchman.
- (165) a. I don't support this one point you mentioned.  
b. This one is 1.5 inches longer than that one.

- (166) a. We want to promote music.  
 b. Please bring up any questions you may have.  
 c. I suggest we go out to eat.
- (167) a. Do you know how to dance?  
 b. He's a pretty good dancer.
- (168) a. I've been here for quite a while. (Or: I came here quite some time ago.)
- (169) a. I built a house.
- (170) a. The guerillas finally arrived.
- (171) a. Has the movie started yet?  
 b. He's a pretty good actor. (Or: He put on a pretty good performance.)
- (175) a. I get dizzy whenever I watch a movie.

## II. STORY

### Kōngjūn Wǎnhuì

Xuéxiàolǐ měixīngqīliù wǎnshang dōu yǒu wǎnhuì.  
 Wǎnhuì de jiémù měicì bùdōu yíyàng. Yǒude shíhou yǒu  
 yīnyuehuì, xuéxiào qīng wàitou yǒumíng de yīnyuejiā dào  
 xuéxiàolǐ lái biǎoyǎn. Yǒude shíhou yǒu tiàowǔhuì, yě yǒude  
 shíhou yǒu diànyīng. Kāi wǎnhuì de shíhou, búdàn quán xiào  
 de jūnguān xuéyuán dōu cānjiā, érqiě hái kěyǐ qīng tāmen de  
 qīnqi, péngyou qù cānjiā. Suǒyǐ měicì wǎnhuì dōu hěn  
 rènao.

Nàxiē xuéyuán duōbàn dōu bú tài xīhuan yīnyuehuì.  
 Yīnwei chūle shǎoshù de xuéyuán duì yīnyuè yǒu yánjiū yìwài,  
 duōshù de dōu bùdǒng yīnyue. Xuéxiào yīnwei yào tíchàng

L. 5

yīnyue, suǒyǐ suīrán xuéyuánmen bú tài xīhuan, háishi chángcháng jǔxíng xiǎo guīmó de yīnyuehuì. Nàxiē xuéyuán de tàidu yě dōu hěn hǎo. Tāmen suīrán bú tài xīhuan yīnyue, kěshi biǎoyǎn wánle de shíhou, dàjiā háishi yíyàng de pāishǒu, biǎoshi hěn mǎnyì.

Xīhuan tiàowǔhuì de rén dàoshi bùshǎo, kěshi huì tiào de rén bùduō. Suǒyǐ měicì kāi tiàowǔhuì, cānjiā de rén hěn tuō, tiào de rén hěn shǎo.

Xuéyuánmen zuì yǒuxìngqu de shì kàn diànyǐngr, tèbié shì kàn duì zhànzhēng yǒu guānxi de diànyǐngr. Bīfang shuō, shàngge lǐbàiliù wǎnshang de nàge Měiguó diànyǐngr dàjiā kànle dōu hěn mǎnyì. Nàge diànyǐngr de nèiróng shì shuō Dièrcì Shìjiè Dàzhàn shíhou de yíge gùshi. Yǒu yíci Yīngguó jūnduì ràng Rìběn jūnduì gěi dǎbàile. Yǒu yíge Yīngguó jūnguān gēn yìxiē Yīngguó bīng ràng díjūn gěi zhuāzhùle. Díjūn jiu jiào tāmen gēn nàge dìfang de lǎobǎixìng yíkuàir zào yíge qiáo. Hòulái qiáo zàohǎo le, dàjiā zhèngzai kāi qìngzhùhuì ne, nàge dìfang de yóujīduì jiu zài qiáo xiàtou máile hěn duō zhànyào, dǎsuàn bǎ qiáo zhàhuī. Zhèjiàn shìqing ràng nàge Yīngguó jūnguān zhīdaole, tā búyuànyì tā zìjǐ zào de qiáo ràng rén zhàhuī, suǒyǐ jiu gēn yóujīduì dǎqilai le. Zuìhòu tā shòule shāng, qiáo yě zhàhuīle. Xuéyuánmen duì zhèyàng de diànyǐngr zuì yǒuxìngqu.

Yǒu yìtiān wǎnshang, chīwánle wǎnfàn, dàjiā zài yíkuàir tánhuà. Shuōzhe shuōzhe jiu shuōqǐ wǎnhuì de shìqing lái le.

Yǒu yíge xuéyuán tíyì, xiàcì wǎnhuì ràng tóngxué zìjǐ lái biǎoyǎn. Dàjiā tīngle tāde yìjian dōu biǎoshi zànchéng. Yǒu yíge xuéyuán cóngqián bànguo qīngzhǔhuì, bǐjiào yǒu jīngyàn, tā jiù tíchulai jǐdiǎn yìjian. Dìyī, quán xiào de xuéyuán yīngdāng xiān kāi yíge huì, wènwèn dàjiā zànchéng búzànchéng xuéyuán zìjǐ biǎoyǎn. Dièr, yàoshi dàjiā zànchéng jiù xuǎnjǔ jǐge dàibiǎo gēn xuéxiào qù shāngliang, wèn xuéxiào yǒu shénme yìjian. Disān, yàoshi xuéxiào méiyǒu wèntí, wǒmen zài xuǎn jǐge rén lái zuò zhǔnbèi gōngzuò. Tā shuōwánle zhèsāndiǎn yìjian, dàjiā dōu pāishǒu zànchéng.

Guòle jǐtiān quán xiào de xuéyuán kāile yíci huì, dàjiā dōu zànchéng, suǒyǐ jiù xuǎnjǔ jǐge zuò zhǔnbèi gōngzuò de rén. Yǒu yìtiān, yǒu yíge guǎn jiémù de tóngxué lái zhǎo Chén Xīng-hàn shuō, zhècì zhǔnbèi jiémù, tā dǎsuàn bǎ yíge fēnduì dāngzuo yíge dānwèi, měige dānwèi zhǎo yíwèi dàibiǎo qù cānjiā biǎoyǎn. Tā qǐng Chén Xīng-hàn dàibiǎo dièr fēnduì qù biǎoyǎn yíge jiémù. Xīng-hàn píngcháng suǐrán yě chángcháng chànggē, kěshi méiyǒu biǎoyǎnguò, suǒyǐ bùgǎn dāying. Kěshi nàwèi tóngxué shuō, tā zǎojiù tīngshuō Xīng-hàn huì chànggē. Tā shuō, yàoshi měige rén dōu búyuànyì cānjiā biǎoyǎn, nàme qǐng shéi biǎoyǎn ne? Xīng-hàn méi fázi, zhǐhǎo dāyingle.

Xīngqīliù wǎnshang, wǎnhuì hái méikāishǐ ne, xuéxiào de dàlǐtáng yìjīng zuòmǎnle rén. Guòle yìhuìr, kāiyǎnle. Jiémù hěn duō, yǒu chànggēde, yǒu tiàowǔde, yǒu shuō

L. 5

xiàohuàde, zuìhòu lúndào Xīng-hàn le. Tā yìchūlai dàjiā jiu dōu pāishǒu. Tā kànjian nàme duō rén, juéde yǒu yìdiǎnr tóuyūn. Tā tīngjian yīnyue kāishǐle, jiu gēnzhe yīnyue chàng. Tā yě bùzhīdao chàngde hǎo bùhǎo. Chàngwánle jiu kànjian dàjiā gǔzhǎng. Tā xiàole xiào, shuōle jǐjù "xièxiè" jiu xiàlaile. Dàjiā dōu shuō Xīng-hàn chàngde búcuò, kěshi Xīng-hàn juéde hěn jǐnzhāng, tóushang dōu shì hàn. Tā shuō, wǒ xiǎng biǎoyǎn chànggē yíding bǐ jiàshǐ fēijī hái nán.

III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. We've been prepared for some time now. If the enemy dares to come, we can surely defeat them.
2. I hear that the soiree being held tomorrow will have music, dancing, and at the end, a dramatic performance (skit).
3. You must go to next week's dance for sure--if you don't like to dance, you can listen to the music.
4. I have a relative who knows how to build bridges. He enlisted during WWII, during which time he built many bridges.
5. These music books aren't bad at all in content--they were written by a musician.
6. Enemy aircraft blew up a lot of houses here, but the people (or civilians) immediately built them up again.
7. He said he had three ideas (suggestions) he was prepared to bring up at the meeting, but on the day of the meeting he didn't come. I heard he got wounded (or injured).
8. They're always mistaking me for a musician--they're always saying I'm a student of music, but to tell the truth I don't understand the first thing about music.



9. They wanted to elect me as their representative to put on a skit, but I really can't act, so I didn't accept.
10. That bridge was no sooner built than it was blown up by guerillas--what a tough break!
11. When their performance was over, a lot of people applauded, probably indicating that the performance was good and that the spectators were pleased with it (satisfied).
12. There's a class of students about to graduate. We're going to have a party to celebrate it. Preparations will begin tomorrow afternoon. If you have any ideas, you may bring them up.
13. Even when I drive I get nauseated. I think if I piloted a plane I'd get even more nauseated. I probably couldn't be a pilot.
14. He's a musician. He once conducted a small-scale concert, and invited his relatives and friends to go and hear it. He said his purpose was to promote music.
15. The play at yesterday's soiree was originally to start at 7:00, but the performers weren't prepared, and as a result it was half an hour late.
16. During WWII he was a soldier, (but) he could act well, so they didn't send him off to fight; they let him perform in the service.
17. At the meeting yesterday there were twenty-odd delegates participating. While there were a lot of suggestions, the ideas they proposed were, without exception, unexceptional.
18. I mistook Mr. Li's ideas for Mr. Zhang's. During the meeting, they brought it up and asked me why I got mixed up, which really embarrassed me.
19. During WWII I was sent to reconnoitre beyond a bridge. I saw someone and asked him what unit he worked in. He wouldn't tell me, so I figured he must be an enemy guerilla and apprehended him.

L. 5

20. Although enemy troops were numerous during the last war, they ultimately let us defeat them. But even though our troops were few in number, many civilians went to fight.

## Lesson 6

I. VOCABULARY

176. qiánjìn                    V: go forward, advance, progress  
IE: Advance! Onward!  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
177. zhīdìng                    V: assign, allocate, designate, appoint  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 177.1 zhīdìng de shíjiān    N: assigned or appointed time  
177.2 zhīdìng de dìfang    N: assigned or designated place
178. zhuǎnwān (guǎiwān)    VO/N: turn  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 178.1 zhuǎnle yíge wān    Ph: made a turn
179. fān gēntou                VO: do a loop, turn a somersault
180. fēixíng                    V/N: fly/flight  
a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 180.1 fēixíngyuán            N: pilot
181. fūchōng                    V/N: dive (acft)  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
182. xìngnéng                    N: performance (characteristics), property, function
183. hōngzhà                    V/N: bomb/bombing (attack)  
a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_
184. gǎn                         V: influence, move, affect

L. 6

184. gǎn (continued)  
 184.1 gǎnjué V/N: feel.../(physical) feelings, sensations  
 [184.2 gǎnqing] N: sentiment, feelings, emotional involvement  
 184.3 gǎnxiǎng N: impressions, feelings or thoughts (on a particular subject)
185. gōngshì N: (defense) works, fortifications
186. Guófángbù N: Defense Department, Ministry of National Defense
187. kuò V: include, enclose, put in parentheses  
 187.1 kuòhào (kuòhú) N: parentheses, brackets  
 187.2 bāokuò V: include
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
188. lián V: unite, join  
 188.1 liánhé V: unite, join
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 188.2 Liánhéguó N: United Nations
189. miáozhǔn RC: aim (at), lay (guns)
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
190. mùbiāo N: target, objective, goal
191. pángde Att/N: other (things) / (the) other(s)  
 191.1 pángrén N: other people, others
192. bīci A: mutually, each other, one another
- a. \_\_\_\_\_

192. bǐcǐ (continued)  
 192.1 bǐcǐ bǐcǐ IE: the same to you, the feeling is mutual
193. pīping V/N: criticize/criticism  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
194. bù M/BF: pace, step  
 194.1 jìnbù V/N: (make) progress, advance/  
 progress, advancement  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 194.2 bùbīng N: infantry, infantryman
195. bùfen M/N: section, part, portion
196. sǎn N: umbrella  
 196.1 jiàngluòsǎn N: parachute  
 196.2 sǎnbīng N: paratrooper  
 196.3 tiàosǎn VO: bail out, parachute  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 196.4 tiàosǎnyuán N: paratrooper
197. sǎo dì VO: sweep the floor  
 197.1 sǎoshè V: strafe  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
198. shèjī V/N: fire (gun), shoot/firing  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
199. shíjiān \* N: time
200. dǎzhòng RC: hit (a target), score a  
 (direct) hit  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_

L. 6

201. dào fēi

V: fly upside down

a. \_\_\_\_\_

202. tāo lùn

V/N: discuss/discussion

203. wàng yuǎn jìng

N: field glasses, binoculars,  
telescope.

204. tè jì fēi xíng

N: acrobatic flying,  
stunt flying.

205. dì diǎn

N: location, position,  
site.

206. tóu

V: toss, pitch, cast; throw  
(oneself) into or towards

206.1 tóu dàn

VO: drop bombs.

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

207. duì

V: correct, proofread,  
compare with, check  
against.

a. \_\_\_\_\_

207.1 duì zhǔn

RC: line up with (runway),  
align on (navigation  
aid), set or synchronize  
(watch, clock)

b. \_\_\_\_\_

[208. Huà xùn Chǔ lǐ Rén yuán]

N: Voice Processing  
Specialist.

209. wěizhuāng                      V/N: camouflage  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
210. yǎnhù                              V/N: cover (military), fly  
     cover for/cover  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
211. yǒnggǎn                          SV/N: brave, courageous/bravery  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_

NOTES

- (176) a. Our forces have advanced another ten "li".
- (177) a. He assigned me to work here.
- (178) a. One must be careful when turning.
- (180) a. I'm starting to learn how to fly.  
 b. I just flew for ten hours. (Or: I just made a ten-hour flight.)
- (181) a. That aircraft dive-bombed.
- (183) a. The bombing results were very good this time.  
 b. We're going to bomb the enemy gasoline depot.
- (187) a. What all does this course (of study) include?
- (188) a. Let us all unite to fight the enemy.
- (189) a. He began firing without (even) aiming at the target.
- (192) a. We should help one another.
- (193) a. Don't be so quick to criticize others.  
 b. Do you support his criticism of me?
- (194) a. He's making fast progress. (Or: He's advancing very quickly.)

L. 6

- (194) b. He's been studying Chinese for a year, but hasn't progressed a bit.
- (196) a. Something went wrong with the aircraft, so he bailed out.
- (197) a. We'll strafe the enemy with machine guns.
- (198) a. Use rifles to fire at the enemy aircraft.  
b. Today we fired three times.
- (200) a. Why can't you ever hit the target?
- (201) a. I've learned how to fly, but I can't fly upside down.
- (202) a. We've been discussing this problem for a long time.  
b. Were you satisfied with the outcome of our discussion this time?
- (206) a. After dropping three bombs, the enemy left.  
b. The bombs that aircraft dropped didn't explode.
- (207) a. When I get this sentence written, I'll have to check it against yours.  
b. Synchronize watches.
- (209) a. The enemy fortifications are well camouflaged.  
b. That object is undoubtedly enemy camouflage.
- (210) a. When ground forces are in battle they must have air cover. (Or: When the Army...)
- (211) a. That soldier is exceptionally brave.

## II. STORY

### Cānguān Yǎnxí

Yǒu yìtiān xuéyuánmen dào jìdì qù cānguān yǎnxí, chūfā yǐqián, duìzhǎng duì xuéyuánmen xùnhuà shuō: "Píngcháng nimen tiāntiān zài xuéxiàolǐ shàng kè, jīntiān qù cānguān



yǎnxí, kěyǐ kànkān shízài de qíngxíng. Xīwàng nǐmen zài cānguān de shíhou tèbié zhùyì. Tīngshuō Guófángbù hái qīngle hěn duō pángde dānwèi yě qù cānguān. Nǐmen dào jīdì yǐhòu yào tèbié shǒu jìlǜ. Dōu zuòzài zhǐdìng de dìfang, búyào suǐbiàn líkāi..." Xùnhuáwánle, tāmen jiù chūfāle.

Dào le jīdì Xīng-hàn kànjian tātái, qìxiàngtái, gēn hěn duō gōngshì, dēngdēng. Tā xiǎng jīntiān cānguān yǎnxí yǐhòu duì jūnshì fāngmian de zhīshi yídìng huì hěn yǒu jìnbù, suǒyǐ xīnlǐ hěn gāoxíng. Zhè shíhou Cài Jīng-shēng hūrán gēn Xīng-hàn shuō: "Nǐ kàn nàbian yǒu yíjià pēnshèjī yào jiàngluò, kànde duō qīngchu a!" Chén Xīng-hàn shuō: "Wǒmen dōu yīngdāng shǒu jìlǜ, nǐ bié shuōhuà, hǎo bùhǎo?"

Hòulái tāmen shàngle cānguān de táizi, dōu zuòzài zhǐdìng de dìfang. Xīng-hàn yíkàn táizi hèn dà, cānguān de rén hěn duō. Chúle tāmen yìwài, hái yǒu pángde jūnshì xuéxiào de xuéyuán gēn zài zhèngfǔ zuòshì de rényuán.

Guòle yíhuìr, dàjiā dōu zuòhǎole. Yǒu yíge jūnguān xiān duì dàjiā shuō jǐjù huà. Tā shuō: "Jīntiān de yǎnxí fēnchéng liǎng bùfen. Dìyí bùfen shì fēixíng yǎnxí, yě jiùshì fēixíng biǎoyǎn, bāokuò fēixíng duìxíng, gēn zhàndòu duìxíng, bìngqiě hái yǒu gèzhǒng tèjì fēixíng xiàng dàofēi, shénmede. Běnlái wǒmen jìhuà yòng liùjià fēijī yǎnxí. Xiànzài wǒmen yíjīng gǎichéng jiǔjià le, dōu shì xìngnéng zuì gāo de xīnshì fēijī.

Dièr bùfen shì zhàndòu yǎnxí, lùjūn gēn kōngjūn liánhé jùxíng. Zhèyíge jiémùlǐ, wǒmen chúle yòng fēijī zài

shàngtou yǎnhù bùbīng qiánjìn yīwài, bìngqiě hái yǎnxí  
 hōngzhàjī tóu dàn, fūchōng hōngzhà, sǎoshè, dēngdēng. Shèjī  
 yǎnxí de shíhou, nǐmen yào zhùyì shèjī de nàge mùbiāo.  
 Shèjī gēn miáozhǔn yǒu hěn dà de guānxi, yàoshi miáobuzhǔn,  
 nàme jiù bùróngyì dǎzhōngle. Zài zhàndòu yǎnxí zhège  
 jiémùlǐ yě yǒu sǎnbīng de tiàosǎn yǎnxí, tāmen yào zài  
 zhǐdìng de shíjiān gēn zhǐdìng de dìdiǎn tiàoxialai zuò zhàn.  
 Wǒmen shùnbìan yě qǐng dàjiā kànkàn wǒmen wěizhuāng de  
 qíngxíng. Zài nǐmen zuò de zhège táiizi qiántou, yǒu hěn  
 duō bùbīng. Tāmen xiànzài dōu dài zhe wěizhuāng ne. Hái yǒu  
 hěn duō wǔqǐ yě dōu wěizhuāngqilaile. Bùzhīdao nǐmen  
 kàndechulai kànbuchulai.

"Yǎnxíwánle yǐhòu, qǐng nǐmen dōu dào jùlèbù qù. Cóng  
 zhèli wàng běi zhuǎn yíge wǎn jiù dào le. Wǒmen yǐjīng pàile  
 yíbùfen jūnguān gēn fēixíngyuán zài nàli zhāodài dàjiā. Wǒ  
 xiǎng bǐcǐ tāolùntāolùn. Nàli yě yǒu hěn duō xīnshì wǔqǐ  
 gēn hěn duō gōngshì de xiàngpiān, hái yǒu gèzhǒng dìtú  
 shénmede. Dàjiā kěyǐ kànyikan. Yàoshi dàjiā yǒu shénme  
 gǎnxiǎng, yǒu shénme yìjian, huòshi pīping, xīwàng dōu néng  
 gào su(wǒ) wǒmen. Hǎo, xiànzài wǒmen jiù yào kāishǐ yǎnxí  
 le."

Jūnguān shuōwánle zhèxiē huà yǐhòu, yǒu hěn duō rén  
 dōu náqǐ wàngyuǎnjǐng duìzhǔnle pǎodào, zìxíde kànzhe.  
 Dàjiā dōu tèbié ānjing, dēngzhe yǎnxí. Zhège shíhou hūrán  
 tīngjianle fēijī de shēngyīn, nàge shēngyīn hěn dà,  
 hǎoxiàng shì biǎoshi zhànzhēng zhēnde jiù yào kāishǐ le.

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. The Ministry of National Defense dispatched those three pilots to fly bombers to bomb the enemy.
2. During firing practice, I didn't hit the target because I failed to take aim.
3. We infantry enlistees often practiced double timing (did double time drills). Sometimes the flight leader would give the command, "Left turn, march!" and, not hearing it clearly, we would turn to the right.
4. Parachuting is a lot of fun. I wanted very much to become a paratrooper, but later on someone told me that when bailing out, you definitely have to jump at a designated time and place. I certainly don't think that would be too easy.
5. When that aircraft dived, I didn't know whether he was going to strafe or bomb--it scared me to death.
6. I wouldn't dare to fly, let alone do acrobatic drills. They criticize me for not being brave enough.
7. Flying upside down is one type of acrobatic flying. Without knowing the performance (characteristics) of the aircraft, I sure wouldn't dare fly upside down.
8. Recently, he's been constantly practicing parachuting and aiming. I feel he's making great leaps forward.
9. I once thought this would be a very suitable place to live. Unfortunately, there are a lot of defense works in the vicinity, which, if war broke out, would certainly be bombing targets.
10. Did you see the war games jointly conducted by the Army and Air Force? Aircraft overhead flying cover, infantry advancing on the ground--it was really something to see!
11. Those trees over there just have to be camouflage; I think there must be fortifications there. (But) even after watching them through the binoculars for quite a while, I still couldn't make anything out.

L. 6

12. Having taken aim at the enemy bombers, I fired, but the bombers immediately made a turn and I didn't hit them.
13. Yesterday the MND asked us to observe the maneuvers. There were many segments, including parachuting, bombing, strafing, etc.
14. After the maneuvers were over, we got together and discussed it for some time, everyone telling each other his impressions (yinxiang). There were also some who had a lot of criticism.
15. He isn't an infantry man or a paratrooper, nor is he a pilot. Do you know what he does?
16. Yesterday he invited me (out) to dinner. At the appointed time I went to the place he had specified to wait for him, but he didn't show. This morning when the two of us met (face to face), neither had a word to say.
17. He assigned me to read a book. The book was titled The Characteristics of Bombers. He didn't have me read any other books.
18. Just as he had begun his dive, but before he could release his bombs, the enemy fighter-bomber was hit by our fire.
19. During the war, Mr. Li worked in the MND. Afterwards, he went to the Air Force school. My criticism of Mr. Li is that he is a courageous person but slow to progress.
20. United together, let us advance bravely toward our goal.

## Lesson 7

I. VOCABULARY

212. chǎng  
 212.1 chǎngzhǎng  
 212.2 gōngchǎng  
 212.3 jiēdào gōngchǎng
- N: factory, plant, mill  
 N: factory, plant or mill  
 manager  
 N: factory  
 N: neighborhood factories  
 (lit. "street factories")
213. jí tǐ Att/A: collective/collectively  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 213.1 jí tǐ nóngchǎng N: collective farm  
 213.2 jí tǐ shēnghuó Ph: collective living
214. qítā(de)\* N: other(s), another, the  
 remaining ones  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
215. qiǎngpò V: force, compel  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
216. jiēdào Att/N: street, neighborhood/  
 street
217. jié tīng V: intercept (radio  
 communications)  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
218. jiěfàng V/N: liberate/liberation  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
219. jìnxíng V: proceed (with), engage in,  
 carry out, go on  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 219.1 shíxíng V: put (plan or idea) into  
 practice, practice (a  
 principle or belief)

L. 7

220. qīnfàn V/N: invade, violate, encroach upon/invasion, violation, encroachment

a. \_\_\_\_\_

220.1 qīnlüè V/N: invade, encroach upon/aggression, invasion

221. qíngbào N: intelligence  
221.1 qíngbào(rén)yuán N: intelligence agents  
221.2 Zhōngyāng Qíngbào jú N: CIA

222. zhōu N: continent  
222.1 Àozhōu PW: Australia  
222.2 Fēizhōu PW: Africa  
222.3 Měizhōu PW: America  
222.4 Nánjīzhōu PW: Antarctica  
222.5 Nánměizhōu PW: South America  
222.6 Ōuzhōu PW: Europe  
222.7 Běiměizhōu PW: North America  
222.8 Yàzhōu (Yǎzhōu) PW: Asia

223. Zhōnghuá Mínguó N: Republic of China  
223.1 Zhōnghuá Rénmín Gònghéguó N: the People's Republic of China  
223.2 Zhōnggòng N: Chinese Communist (abbrev. of above)

224. ěrjī N: earphone, headset  
224.1 dài ěrjī VO: wear earphones

225. héping N/Att: peace/peaceful

226. hézuò V/N: cooperate/cooperation

a. \_\_\_\_\_

227. xiāoxi N: news

228. xīnlǐ N: psychology  
228.1 xīnlǐzhàn N: psychological warfare (psywar)  
228.2 xīnlǐxué N: psychology  
228.3 xīnlǐxuéjiā N: psychologist  
228.4 bǐjiào xīnlǐxué N: comparative psychology  
228.5 shèhuì xīnlǐxué N: social psychology

229. xuānchuán V/N: propagate, publicize,  
propagandize/propaganda,  
publicity
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
230. xuéxi V: study, learn
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
231. rǎoluàn V: disturb, interfere with,  
jam (a radio broadcast),  
harass
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
232. rénmin N: (the) people
233. gǎizào V/N: reform, remould,  
transform/reform
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
234. gèrén N: individual  
234.1 gèrénzhūyì N: individualism
235. kǒuhào N: slogan
236. guǎngbō V/N: broadcast
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
237. gōnggòng (gōngyòng) BF: common, public  
237.1 gōnggòng shítáng N: public dining hall  
237.2 gōngyòng diànhuà N: public telephone, pay  
phone
238. gōngshè N: commune  
238.1 rénmin gōngshè N: people's commune(s)
239. gōngyè N/Att: industry/industrial  
239.1 gōngyèzhūyìzhě N: industrialist  
239.2 gōngyè guǎnlǐ N: industrial management

L. 7

240. liyòng V: utilize, make use of, take advantage of, exploit
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 240.1 shiyòng V: use, utilize, employ  
240.2 yingyòng SV/V/N: useful, practical/apply, put to use/application
241. mà V: scold, curse, abuse, censure, rebuke
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 241.1 mà tā yídùn Ph: give him a good scolding
242. nóngyè N: agriculture  
242.1 nóngchǎng N: farm  
242.2 nóng rén (nóngmín) N: farmer
243. bō N: wave  
243.1 bōcháng N: wave length  
243.2 bōlàng N: wave (any body of water)  
243.3 chángbō N: long wave  
243.4 duǎnbō N: short wave
244. shèhuìzhǔyì N: socialism  
244.1 shèhuìzhǔyì gǎizào Ph: socialist reform
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
245. shēngchǎn V/N: produce, turn out, make, yield/production
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
246. shítáng N: mess hall, dining hall
247. shōutīng\* V: listen to, listen in on
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 247.1 shōutīng\* CE: stand by
248. sixiǎng N: thought



249. dàlù  
249.1 "dǎhuí dàlù" N: continent, mainland  
S1: "Retake the Mainland!"
250. Dàyuèjìn<sup>1</sup>  
250.1 Gōngyè Dàyuèjìn Ph: Great Leap Forward  
Ph: Great Leap Forward in Industry  
250.2 Nóngyè Dàyuèjìn Ph: Great Leap Forward in Agriculture
251. Táiwān PW: Taiwan, Formosa
252. diào V: transfer, move
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 252.1 diào bīng VO: move troops
253. diàntái N: (radio) station  
253.1 Zhōngyāng Rénmín  
Guǎngbō Diàntái N: People's Central  
Broadcasting Station  
253.2 jūnyòng diàntái N: military (radio) station
254. duōkuàihǎoshěng S1: achieve greater,  
faster, better and more  
economical results
255. záyīn\* N: static
256. zēngjiā\* V: increase, add to
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
257. yìbān A: in general, generally  
257.1 yìbānrén N: people in general

1. Great Leap Forward - 1958-1960.

NOTES

- (213) a. They collectively went to Asia.
- (214) a. The other aircraft hasn't (haven't) returned yet.
- (215) a. The Chinese Communists force the people to take part in communes and live collectively.
- (217) a. The enemy often intercepts our broadcasts.
- (218) a. The Chinese Communists have always wanted to liberate Taiwan.

L. 7

- (219) a. Representatives of Japan and China are presently engaged in meetings.
- (220) a. You shouldn't violate the freedom of others.
- (226) a. If we can cooperate, we can surely increase production.
- (229) a. I think that is Chinese Communist propoganda, not the truth.  
b. The movie now playing at the Central Theater is being highly publicized in the papers.
- (230) a. He's been studying on that base for one year.
- (231) a. They're trying to find a way to jam our radio (station) broadcasts.
- (233) a. There have already been two reforms.
- (236) a. This item has already been broadcast three times.  
b. This is an American (station) broadcast, not a French (station) broadcast.
- (240) a. I plan to take advantage of the vacation to travel in Europe.
- (241) a. The Chinese Communists often take advantage of news broadcasting to rebuke people.
- (244) a. Once socialist reform is put into practice, what is the outcome likely to be?
- (245) a. The object of the Great Leap Forward in Agriculture was to get the people to produce more.  
b. We ought to increase production.
- (247) a. He often listens to Chinese music (broadcast) programs.
- (252) a. The MND transferred him to Tainan (Air)base.
- (256) a. The population here has recently increased a lot.

II. STORY

## Zhōnggòng Guǎngbō

Chén Xīng-hàn shòuwán jībēn jiàoliàn yǐhòu, diàodao jūnyòng diàntái qù shòu xùn. Tiāntiān dàizhe ěrjī shōutīng Zhōnggòng Zhōngyāng Rénmín Guǎngbō Diàntái de guǎngbō, bìngqiě bǎ měitiān shōutīng de xiāoxi xiěhǎo, bàogào gěi jīdì de qíngbào rényuán. Tāde gōngzuò mángjíle.

Àn jūnduì lǐtou de guīju, jūnrén bùnéng suíbiàn tāolùn zhèngzhì de wèntí, gèng bùxǔ luàn tán jūnshì de mìmì. Kěshi, yīnwei Xīng-hàn gēn tāde péngyou dōu shòuguó zhèngzhì xùnliàn, suǒyǐ bùguǎn tāmen zěnmē shōutīng dàlù de guǎngbō, tāmen yě yídìng búhuì xìn Zhōnggòng de xuānchuán.

Gēnjù Chén Xīng-hàn shōutīng de jīngyàn, Zhōnggòng duì Dàlù, duì Yàzhōu gēn duì Táiwān guǎngbō de jiémù duōjíle. Zhōnggòng zhīdao zhèsāngē dìfang rénmín de xīnlǐ bùtóng, suǒyǐ duì měiyíge dìqū guǎngbō de jìshù yě bùyíyàng. Bīfang shuō, Zhōnggòng lìyòng Yàzhōu qítā hěn duō guójiā fānduì Měiguó de xīnlǐ, suǒyǐ duì Yàzhōu guǎngbō de shíhou, chángcháng mà Měiguó, shuō Měiguó qīnfàn Zhōngguó de Táiwān, shuō Měiguó lìyòng Rìběn de jīdì. Chúle zhège yīwài, tāmen suíshí xuānchuán gòngchǎnzhǔyì de hǎochu, mùdì shì xīwàng zhèxiē Yàzhōu de guójiā yě gēnzhe Zhōnggòng xuéxí.

Zhōnggòng duì Dàlù rénmín de guǎngbō, zhǔyào de shì xuānchuán gòngchǎnzhǔyì shì yìzhǒng zhèngquè de sīxiǎng, bìngqiě xuānchuán Zhōnggòng duì Zhōngguó de hǎochu. Zài

dìyige qíngxínglǐ Zhōnggòng fǎnduì yíqiè tāmen rènwéi búzhèngquè de sīxiǎng; jǐnggào suǒyǒu fǎnduì Zhōnggòng de rén, bìngqiě jìnzhǐ suǒyǒu fǎnduì Zhōnggòng de huódòng. Zài dìèrge qíngxínglǐ, Zhōnggòng lìyòng Zhōngguó rén ài guójiā de xīnlǐ, suíshí xuānchuán Zhōngguó gōngyè, nóngyè "Dàyuèjìn" de qíngxíng, xīwàng rénmin xiǎode Zhōngguó "Shèhuìzhūyì de Gǎizào" shì yíge zhèngquè de zuǒfǎ.

Zhōnggòng shíxíng "Dàyuèjìn" de mùdì shì yào zēngjiā gōngyè shēngchǎn gēn nóngyè shēngchǎn. Yīnwei zhège yuángu, tāmen zàole yíge "Duōkuàihǎoshēng" de kǒuhào zài Dàlùshang xuānchuán, yào quán guó liúwànwàn rénmin "duō" shēngchǎn, "kuài" shēngchǎn, bìngqiě yào dàjiā shēngchǎn de dōngxi yòu "hǎo" yòu "shēng" qián.

Zài shèhuì zǔzhī fāngmiàn, Zhōnggòng tèbié zhùyì jítǐ shēnghuǒ, fǎnduì gèrén zìyóu. Yīnwei zhège yuángu, tāmen cóng 1958 nián qǐ, kāishǐ zài xiāngxia zǔzhī "rénmin gōngshè," bǎ rénmin zǔzhīchéng bùtóng de shēngchǎn dàduì, qiǎngpò dàjiā guò jítǐ shēnghuó, bìngqiě jítǐ shēngchǎn. Cóng 1960 nián qǐ, Zhōnggòng yòu zài chéng lǐtōu zǔzhī "rénmin gōngshè" bàn "jiēdào gōngchǎng," "gōnggòng shítáng" dēngdēng. Jiéguǒ, xiànzài shōutīng rénmin diàntái guǎngbō de shíhou, wǒmen chángcháng tīngdào de shì jítǐ shēnghuó de hǎochu. Zài Dàlùshang, gèrén de zìyóu shì yuèlái yuèshǎo le.

Zhōnggòng duì Táiwān de guǎngbō, wánquán shì shíxíng xīnlǐzhàn. Jīntiān tāmen xīwàng gēn Táiwān hézuò, míngtiān

tāmen yào "jiěfàng" Táiwān. Jīntiān xīwàng yòng hépíng de bànfǎ jiějué liǎng fāngmiàn de wèntí, míngtiān yòu xuānchuán fēi zuò zhàn bùkě.

Gēnjù wǒmen suǒzhīdao de, Zhōnggòng xiànzài měitiān duì Táiwān guǎngbō shíwǔge zhōngtóu. Xiàng Zhōnggòng nàiyàng de guǎngbō, zài Táiwān yòng píngcháng de shōuyīnjī, suǐshí kěyǐ tīngdào. Búguò, yīnwei Táiwān zhèngfǔ búyuànyǐ yìbānrén suǐbiàn shōutīng Dàlùshang de xuānchuán, suǒyǐ Táiwān de diàntái chángcháng rǎoluàn Zhōnggòng de guǎngbō. Néng shōutīng Zhōnggòng guǎngbō de, zhǐ yǒu jūnyòng diàntái gēn duǎnbō de wúxiàndiàn shōuyīnjī. Píngcháng de wúxiàndiàn shōuyīnjīlǐ, záyīn tài duō, tīngbuqīngchu. Xìngkuī zài Táiwān de rén dōu xiǎode Zhōnggòng guǎngbō de jìshù gēn tāmen xuānchuán de mùdì, suǒyǐ bùtīng tāmen de xuānchuán yě jiù suǎnle.

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. All the news (items) he was talking about were broadcast by Chinese Communist radio stations.
2. At present there is no free thought for people on the Chinese mainland.
3. I'm thinking of taking advantage of peacetime to learn about industry.
4. When he saw me wearing earphones, he thought I was listening in on Chinese Communist broadcasts. Actually, I was studying Chinese.

L. 7

5. There's a sign at the door of the radio station which reads "Loud talking prohibited."
6. Although there are a lot of military men who eat at that restaurant, it isn't a military restaurant--any of us can go in and eat.
7. When they say they want peace, I don't think it's necessarily true; perhaps it's psychological warfare.
8. Do you know what "liberation" and "socialistic reform" mean? I don't have a very clear understanding. (What I know isn't very clear.)
9. People in general don't know what psywar is, but the Chinese Communists like to use psywar.
10. You've studied a lot about industry, and I have an extensive knowledge of agriculture--why don't the two of us cooperate!
11. The radio station here broadcasts a lot of news daily; there is news from Asia, Europe and Australia.
12. I don't like to listen to the People's Central Broadcasting Station news; I think the bulk of the "news" is propaganda and not necessarily true.
13. Slogans such as "increase production," "achieve greater, faster, better, and more economical results," and "Great Leap Forward in Agriculture" sound very nice, (but) what do you think the outcome would be if they were put into practice?
14. Whenever I hear about people's communes, it makes my head spin. I think they're just places where the Chinese Communists force common people to live collectively.
15. They say they want peace, but they're always infringing on other people's freedom. Everyone curses them.
16. I suspect (think) the things produced in those neighborhood factories aren't necessarily any good, and the food cooked in public dining halls likewise can't be any good to eat. What do you say?
17. A Chinese military radio (station) broadcast said they can reform people's thought and can even reform people's minds (mental dispositions). Do you think it's that simple?

18. In Africa and Asia there are many small countries whose industry and agriculture are both undeveloped. I hope the U.S. can help them increase production.
19. Don't disturb him--he's studying individualism, but he doesn't like individualism in the least.
20. Yesterday I bought a short wave receiver, but when I listened to it, I couldn't hear very well--there was too much static.









276. bǎi (continued)  
 276.4 bǎishè V/N: arrange/ornament,  
 knick-knack  
 276.5 bǎi shǒu VO: wave or motion with the  
 hands
277. bàofēngyǔ N: storm
278. bìxū AV: have to, obliged to, need  
 to, must  
 [278.1 bìxūde] N: essential, required,  
 necessary, obligatory  
 [278.2 bìxū děi] Ph: necessary to, essential to
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
279. píjuàn SV: tired, weary, exhausted
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
280. piàn(r) M: slice (of meat or bread);  
 tablet (medicine); stand  
 (of trees); expanse (of  
 water)
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
281. píngwěn SV: steady, stable; smooth,  
 level
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
282. bùzhībùjué(de) A: unawares, unconsciously,  
 before one knows it
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
283. bùmen N: department, branch,  
 section (of an  
 organization)
284. shāndǐng N: mountain peak  
 [284.1 shānyāo ] N: mountainside (lit. waist  
 of the mountain)  
 [284.2 shānjiǎo ] N: foot of a mountain
285. shùnzhe CV: (go) along, following
- a. \_\_\_\_\_

L. 8

286. Táizhōng PW: Taizhong (city in Taiwan)
287. tàikōng N: space
288. tiělù N: railroad  
288.1 Tiělùjú N: Railroad Bureau
289. tú N: picture, illustration,  
drawing, chart  
289.1 túyàng N: plans, designs
290. duàn M/N: section, piece,  
paragraph
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
291. yímiàn...yímiàn... Patt: on one hand..., on the  
other hand (same as  
yìbiānr...yìbiānr...)
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
292. yǔyī N: raincoat  
292.1 yǔxié N: rubbers  
292.2 yǔxuē N: rainboots  
292.3 yǔmào N: rainhat  
292.4 yǔsǎn N: umbrella

NOTES

- (258) a. Trains and automobiles are both very safe.
- (259) a. He arranged a vacation travel plan for me.
- (260) a. What do you say we go have a look at the exhibit!
- (262) a. I'm going to N.Y. during my vacation.
- (263) a. This is a very specialized field of knowledge.  
b. He specializes in repairing engines. (Or: He  
exclusively does engine repairs.)
- (276) a. Where did you put those things?
- (278) a. You must take along more money on this trip.
- (279) a. Are you tired now?

- (280) a. Look over there--that expanse of water with the stand of trees alongside. How pretty!
- (281) a. The PRAT buses ride very smoothly.
- (282) a. Before he knew it, he had fallen asleep.
- (285) a. If you follow this road south (go south along this road), you'll come to Tāizhōng.
- (290) a. This section of highway was just constructed.
- (291) a. He smoked as he chatted with his friend(s).

## II. STORY

### Xiūjià Lǚxíng

Chén Xīng-hàn zài xuéxiào shòule bànnián de xùnliàn yǐhòu, nàge shíhou yǐjīng kuài fàng niánjià le. Tā zhǔnbèi zài fàng niánjià de shíhou dào Táizhōng qù lǚxíng yíci. Zài Táizhōng fùjìn yǒu yíge fēijī xiūlǐchǎng. Tā yǒu yíge péngyou jiào Wèi Jiàn-huá zài nàge chǎnglǐ zuò shì. Tā xiǎng dào nàr qù kànkàn péngyou, tóngshí cānguāncānguān nàge gōngchǎng de qíngxíng.

Tā bǎ jìhua xiǎnghǎole, gào su(ng) tāde fùmǔ. Tā fùmǔ jiu wèn tā shénme shíhou dòng shēn, shénme shíhou huílai. Hái wèn tā xūyào duōshao qián. Tā shuō tā hái yǒu yìdiǎnr xiànqián. Dàgài gòu yòngde.

Táiwān de jiāotōng xiāngdāng fāngbian. Tiělù, gōnglù dōu bànde hěn hǎo. Shíjiān hěn zhǔn, yě hěn ānquán. Méitīngshuō yǒu zhuàng chē de shìqing. Zuò gōnglùjú de chángtú qìchē bǐ zuò huǒchē piányi. Lùshang de fēngjǐng yě hǎo. Suǒyǐ Chén Xīng-hàn zhǔnbèi zuò chángtú qìchē dào

Táizhōng qù, qīng Wèi Jiàn-huá dào Táizhōng gōnglùjú de qìchēzhàn qù jiē tā.

Chén Xīng-hàn zài dòng shēn yīqián, gěi Wèi Jiàn-huá dǎle yíge chángtú diànhuà, gào su(ng) Wèi Jiàn-huá tā shénme shíhou dào.

Chén Xīng-hàn búyùbei dài hěn duō de xíngli. Kěshi yǒu jǐjiàn dōngxì tā yīwéi shì bìxūde. Chule wàngyuǎnjìng, zhàoxiàngjī yīwài, zuì yào jīn de jiùshi yǔyī, yǔmào. Yīnwei Táiwān dōngtiān tiānqi bú tài hǎo, suīrán bùcháng yǒu bàofēngyǔ, kěshi yīntiān, xià xiǎoyǔ de shíhou hěn duō.

Chén Xīng-hàn zài chángtú qìchēshàng kàn gōnglù liǎngbiānr de fēngjǐng. Qìchē zǒude hěn píngwěn. Yǒu yíduàn gōnglù, qìchē zài shān lǐtōu shùnzhē yìtiáo hé zǒu, zǒude hěn màn. Yìdiǎnr yìdiǎnr de jiù zǒudào shāndǐngshàng què. Nàge shíhou tiānqi hěn hǎo. Cóng shānshàng wàng xià kàn, zhèyípiàn shì shùlínzi, nà yípiàn shì yíge xiǎo chéng. Zhèyìtiáo shì hé, nà yìtiáo shì gāng zǒuguò de gōnglù. Zhèr yǒu yíge qiáo, nàr yǒu yíge miào. Dōu kànde fēicháng qīngchū.

Chén Xīng-hàn dào le Táizhōng, tiān yíjīng hēile. Jiànzhào Wèi Jiàn-huá, liǎngge rén dōu tèbié tòngkuai. Wèi Jiàn-huá gào su(ng) Chén Xīng-hàn shuō tā yíjīng bǎ zhù de dìfang ānpáihǎole. Zài chéng wàitōu, búyuǎn, zǒuzhe jiù kěyǐ qù. Kěshi tā bùzhīdao Chén Xīng-hàn píjuàn bùpíjuàn. Chén Xīng-hàn shuō jiànzhào lǎo péngyou jiù wàngle píjuàn le.

Tāmen liǎngge rén zǒuzhe chūle chéng, yímiàn tánhuà yímiàn zǒu. Xiǎng shuō de huà hěn duō, bùzhīdao cóng shénme dìfang shuōqi. Yìhuìr tídao tāmende gōngzuò, yìhuìr tídao shìjiè dàshì, yìhuìr tándao liánhégúo de zǔzhí. Chén Xīng-hàn hūrán kànjian tiānshang de xīngxing, yuèliang. Tā yòu tíqi rénzào wèixīng de wèntí lái le.

Zài tàikāng lǚxíng shì yíge fēicháng yǒuyìsi de tímù. Tāmen tánle hěn duō guānyú zài tàikāng lǚxíng de shìqing, suīrán tāmen liǎngge rén dōu bùdǒng, kěshi tāmen zhīdao zhèjiàn shì hěn fùzá, gēn zài dìmiànshang lǚxíng bùfāyàng. Kěshi yě yǒude qíngxíng gēn zài dìmiànshang lǚxíng chàbuduō. Jǔlì lái shuō, yàoshi yǒu yíge rén píngcháng yùn chuán, yùn chē, nàme zhège rén yàoshi zuò huǒjiàn zài tàikānglǐ lǚxíng de shíhou yídìng gèng yūn.

Tāmen tánzhe huà bùzhībùjuéde jiu dào le.

Dièrtiān, Wèi Jiàn-huá dàizhe Chén Xīng-hàn dào xiūlǐchǎng qù cānguān. Nàge chǎng de guīmó hěn dà, bumen hěn duō. Fēijīshang de fādòngjī, jīshēn, wúxiàndiàn, luóxuánjiǎng, shènzhīyú gèzhǒng língjiàn, dōu yǒu zhuānmén rényuán fùzé xiūlǐ. Hòulái, tāmen dào le yíge zhǎnlǎnshì, zhuōzishang bǎizhe hěn duō móxíng, qiángshang guàzhe hěn duō tú, dōu shì gèzhǒng xīnshì fēijī, gèzhǒng huǒjiàn dēngdēng. Tāmen duì zhèxiē dōu fēicháng yǒuxìngqu.

Chén Xīng-hàn zài Táizhōng zhùle sāntiān, gēn tā péngyou zài yíkuàir tántan huà, kànkàn dǎ qiú, tīngting jiǎngyǎn, wánrde fēicháng tòngkuai.

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. I went on a trip to Taizhong during the New Year's vacation. I took a long distance PRAT bus.
2. Last night the radio broadcast said that there would be a storm today. When you go out, you'd better wear a raincoat and rainhat.
3. Follow this railroad and you'll be able to see the factory.
4. The New Haven Railroad Bureau has many factories and repair depots. If there is any trouble with their trains or railroads, they make repairs at any time, so their trains are extremely smooth, especially on this New Haven-New York section.
5. I stood on a mountain peak and looked down. Besides (seeing) a temple and a stand of trees, all I saw was the clouds and the sea.
6. Next week I have a vacation and am thinking of returning home to rest for a few days. If my travel money (expenses) is sufficient, I will start on the trip Friday afternoon.
7. Yesterday I made a long distance phone call. When the telephone company (person) asked me to pay cash, I gave it to (him, her).
8. The Public Roads and Transportation Bureau's buses are very fast, and so are the Railroad Bureau's trains. Long-distance travel is very convenient now.
9. My friend and I drank tea as we chatted, and before we knew it, it was 11 o'clock. However, I wasn't a bit tired.
10. There's something wrong with that aircraft. I don't know whether it's the engine or the propeller. Probably have to send it to the repair depot for repairs right away.



11. I don't get tired when I do interesting things. For example, the last time Mary and I traveled on a long distance bus, we snacked and chatted, and before we knew it, had arrived in New Haven. And we weren't the least bit tired.
12. I dreamed that I changed into a rocket and traveled through space and saw many stars. After I woke up, I still felt tired.
13. Going by boat is not only cheap, but moreover, it is safe. What is unfortunate is that I get seasick, so I don't often go by boat.
14. That factory has an exhibition hall. Just now they are exhibiting a scale model of a man-made satellite. Let's go look at it together.
15. In college he specializes in (especially studies) man-made satellites and rockets. Those scale models and charts in the exhibition hall were all made by him.
16. He arranged the parts of the engine here, but I don't know how to put together an engine.
17. I get seasick when I go by boat, and I also feel tired. The next time I go on a trip, I'm going by long distance bus.
18. I'm going on vacation next month and I'm thinking of making use of the vacation time to go on a long trip to famous places everywhere. Can you plan it for me?
19. This stretch of railroad from the foot of the mountain to the peak is not only smooth, it is also very fast.
20. During vacation, I think reading books at home is best. Not only is it safe, but you also save travel expenses. You don't get too tired either.



## Lesson 9

I. VOCABULARY

293. zhàngài(wù) N: obstacle, obstruction, hindrance, barrier, stumbling block, impediment; malfunction
294. zháo huǒ VO: catch fire
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
295. chètūi V/N: withdraw (mil.), fall back, evacuate/ withdrawal, retreat, evacuation
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 295.1 chèdao V: withdraw to  
295.2 chè bīng VO: withdraw troops, pull back troops
296. zhèndì N: (battle) position, battle front, battlefield
297. chèn(zhe) V: avail oneself of (time, occasion, opportunity, etc.)
- 297.1 chèn jīhuì VO: take (this) opportunity to..., take advantage of the opportunity
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
298. jiāngjūn N: general officer(s)  
298.1 shàngjiāng N: General  
298.2 zhōngjiāng N: Lieutenant General  
298.3 shàojiāng N: Major General  
298.4 zhūnjiāng N: Brigadier General  
298.5 wǔxīng shàngjiāng N: General of the Air Force ("five-star general")
299. jiàoguān N: instructor (in military school)
300. jùjué V/N: refuse, reject, decline/ refusal, rejection
- a. \_\_\_\_\_

L. 9

301. fāxiàn

V/N: discover, find out,  
uncover, detect/  
discovery

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

302. fāshēng

V: happen, occur, develop

a. \_\_\_\_\_

303. fù

M/Att: one of a pair/vice or  
deputy (rank), secondary,  
subsidiary, auxiliary,  
assistant

303.1 fùxiàozhǎng

N: vice-principal

303.2 fùsīlǐng

N: deputy commandant

304. rèn

V/N: allow, tolerate, bear/  
(civic) burden, duties,  
responsibilities, office

304.1 rènwu

N: mission, duty, task

304.2 chū rènwu

VO: go out on a mission

a. \_\_\_\_\_

304.3 zéren

N: duty, responsibility,  
obligation

304.4 fù zé(ren)

SV/VO: responsible/shoulder the  
responsibility for,  
take charge of, answer  
for

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

305. gāojí

Att: high ranking, senior;  
advanced (training)

306. kǎolǚ

V/N: think over, consider,  
deliberate/thought,  
consideration,  
deliberation

a. \_\_\_\_\_



L. 9

315. shāo V: burn, heat  
 315.1 kāishuǐ N: boiling water, boiled water  
 315.2 shāo shuǐ VO: heat or boil water  
 315.3 liángkāishuǐ N: cool boiled water
316. shāowēi A: slightly, somewhat  
 316.1 shāowēi SV yidiǎnr  
 Patt: slightly SV-er
- a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
317. shèbèi V/N: equip/equipment, facilities, installation  
 317.1 pèibèi V/N: equip/equipment
318. shēnfènzhèng N: I.D. card
319. shīzōng V: lose track of; missing, without traces
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
320. shēnshang N: on the body, on the person
321. sōuchá V: search, seek, look for
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 321.1 sōuchulai RC: search out, turn up (in a search)  
 321.2 sōusuǒ V/N: search
322. Táinán PW: Tainan, a city in Taiwan
323. dāngshí TW: at that time, at the same time, meanwhile
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 323.1 dāngdì N/Att: that place/local, in that place, on-the-spot
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 323.2 dāngtiān TW: on that day, on the same day

324. táozǒu V: flee, escape, desert, run away
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 324.1 táochulai RC: escape (from)
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 324.2 táodao V: escape to, flee to
325. tóufa N: hair (on a human head)
326. tóuxiáng V/N: surrender, capitulate/  
surrender, capitulation
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
327. zǒngtǒng N: president (of a country)  
327.1 fúzǒngtǒng N: vice-president (of a country)
328. tuì V: retire; withdraw, retreat, move back
- 328.1 tuìzhí V: resign, retire (from a job), withdraw (from office)
- 328.2 tuìchū V: evacuate, leave, withdraw from
- 328.3 tuìxué VO: drop out of school
329. yīngxióng N: hero
330. yùjian V: meet, encounter, happen upon (unexpectedly)

NOTES

- (294) a. Those things are very combustible, don't leave them here.
- (295) a. When the enemy retreated, they left a lot of things behind.
- (297) a. While I was away from home, he took the opportunity to make off with my money.
- (300) a. He wanted to borrow ten bucks (dollars), but I refused.

L. 9

- (301) a. Who discovered that enemy aircraft?  
b. This can be considered a new discovery.
- (302) a. On which day did this matter take place?
- (304) a. I went out on three missions today.  
b. He's very responsible.  
c. You'll have to shoulder some of the responsibility too.
- (306) a. You should give this matter serious consideration.  
(Or: You should think this matter over carefully.)
- (309) a. How did the air battle turn out yesterday? (Or: What was the outcome of yesterday's air battle?)  
b. Our aircraft engaged in a ten minute air battle with the enemy.
- (310) a. Although that model of car is small, it is very easy handling.
- (311) a. He said that, while flying is fun, it's too risky.
- (312) a. Don't let the child crawl on the ground.  
b. This type of aircraft can climb very fast.
- (313) a. He has considerable know-how.  
b. That guy is really capable.
- (314) a. That affair is terribly unfortunate.  
b. Unfortunately, our aircraft was hit by enemy (fire).
- (315) a. Please burn those papers.
- (316) a. I have somewhat of a fever today. (Or: I'm a slight bit feverish today.)  
b. He is slightly taller than I.
- (319) a. He's already been missing for a year now; maybe he's dead.



- (321) a. They've been searching that house for some time now, and haven't turned up anything so far.
- (323) a. At the time, I didn't know what to do.  
b. All of the locals dislike him.
- (324) a. That pilot escaped.  
b. Did you escape for the Chinese mainland?
- (326) a. Have all the enemy surrendered?  
b. Who did you run into in the city yesterday?

## II. STORY

### Xùnhuà

Kōngjūn Tōngxùn Xuéxiào cháng qīng gāojí jūnguān dào xuéxiào qù xùnhuà. Nàxiē gāojí jūnguān bù yíding shì kōngjūn de jūnguān, yǒude shíhou shì lùjūn de, yě yǒude shíhou shì hǎijūn de. Měinián xuéyuán, bìyè de shíhou, hái qīng zǒngtǒng huòshi fùzǒngtǒng qù xùnhuà.

Shànglibǎiyī xuéxiào qīng Táinán kōngjūn jīdì de Gāo shàojiàng qù xùnhuà. Gāo shàojiàng zài Zhōngguó kōngjūnlǐ shízài shì yíge liǎobudé de yīngxióng. Tā shì hángkōng xuéxiào bìyè de. Búguò, nà shì hěn jiǔ yǐqián de shìqing le. Nàge shíhou zhèngfǔ gāng kāishǐ bàn hángkōng xuéxiào, suǒyǐ yíqiè shèbèi dōu bú tài hǎo. Gāo shàojiàng bìyè yǐhòu, jiù zài nàge xuéxiào dāng jiàoguān, jiējí bú tài gāo. Hòulái Zhōngguó gēn Rìběn dǎqizhànglaile. Yǒu yìtiān, yǒu sānjià Rìběn zhàndòujī yǎnhùle yíjià hōngzhàjī lái zhà hángkōng xuéxiào. Hángkōng xuéxiào méiyǒu xīnshì de

zhàndòujī, dāngrán méi fázi gēn Riběn fēijī zuò zhàn.  
 Kěshi Gāo jiàoguān páshangle yíjià jiùshì de fēijī jiu yào  
 qífēi qù dǎ díjī, biéde nàxiē bǐ tā jiējí gāo de jiàoguān  
 dōu quàn tā bié màoxiǎn, yīnwei nàjià fēijī fēixíng de  
 sùdù méiyóu xīnshì de zhàndòujī kuài, págāo, zhuǎnwān yě  
 méiyóu xīnshì de zhàndòujī língbiàn, zěnme néng shàngqu  
 zuò zhàn ne? Gāo jiàoguān shuō tā méiyóu shíjiān kǎolǚ  
 nàxiē wèntí. Tā shuōwán jiu qífēile. Tāde fēijī gāng  
 líkāi pǎodào jiu ràng díjī gěi fāxiànle. Díjī yòng  
 jīguānqiāng sǎoshè, dǎzhòngle tāde fēijī. Fēijī zháohuǒle,  
 tā zìjǐ yě búxìng shòule shāng, kěshi méisǐ.

Tāde shāng hǎole yǐhòu, yòu huídào kōngjūnlǐ qù fúwù,  
 cānjiāle yìbǎiduōcǐ kōngzhàn, ràng tā dǎxiàlai de díjī yě  
 shízài bùshǎo. Yǒu yíci qù rènwu de shíhou, tāde fēijī de  
 fādòngjī fāshēng zhàngài, méi fázi jiu yòng jiàngluòsǎn zài  
 díren de zhèndì hòutou tiàoxialai. Jiéguǒ ràng díren gěi  
 zhuāzhùle. Díren zài tā shēnshang sōuchū yìzhāng  
 shēnfènzhèng lái, fāxiàn tāde míngzi, zhīdao tā shì yíge  
 yòu yǒnggǎn yòu yǒu běnshi de fēixíngyuán, suǒyǐ qiǎngpò tā  
 tóuxiáng. Tā jùjuéle.

Hòulái Riběn jūnduì chètūile, qíngxíng hěn luàn. Tā  
 jiu chèn jīhuì táochulai, yùjian dāngdì de yóujīduì, bǎ tā  
 sònghuilaile. Nàcì tā yígòng shízōngle sānge yuè, hěn duō  
 tóngshì dōu yīwéi tā yíjīng sǐle.

Dièrcì Shìjiè Dàzhàn gāng wán, Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ yòu gēn  
 gòngfěi dǎqǐlaile. 1949nián zhèngfǔ chédao Táiwān lái, jiu

pài tā zài Táinán kōngjūn jīdì fúwù.

Hěn duō kōngjūn xuéxiào de xuéyuán cóngqián méikànjīanguo Gāo shàojiàng, dōu yīwéi tā yídìng zhǎngde yòu gāo yòu dà. Kěshi tāmen kànjian Gāo shàojiàng yǐhòu dōu juéde hěn qíguài. Tā zhǎngde yě bùgāo yě búda. Tóushang de tóufa dōu kuài méiyǒu le. Zuǒ jiǎo shāowēi yǒu diǎnr máobīng, suǒyǐ zǒu lù zǒude hěn màn. Kàn tāde yàngzi wánquán búxiàng shì Zhōngguó kōngjūn de yíge yīngxióng yě búxiàng yíge yǒu běnshi de kōngjūn jūnguān, jiù xiàng shì yíge lǎo kēxuéjiā.

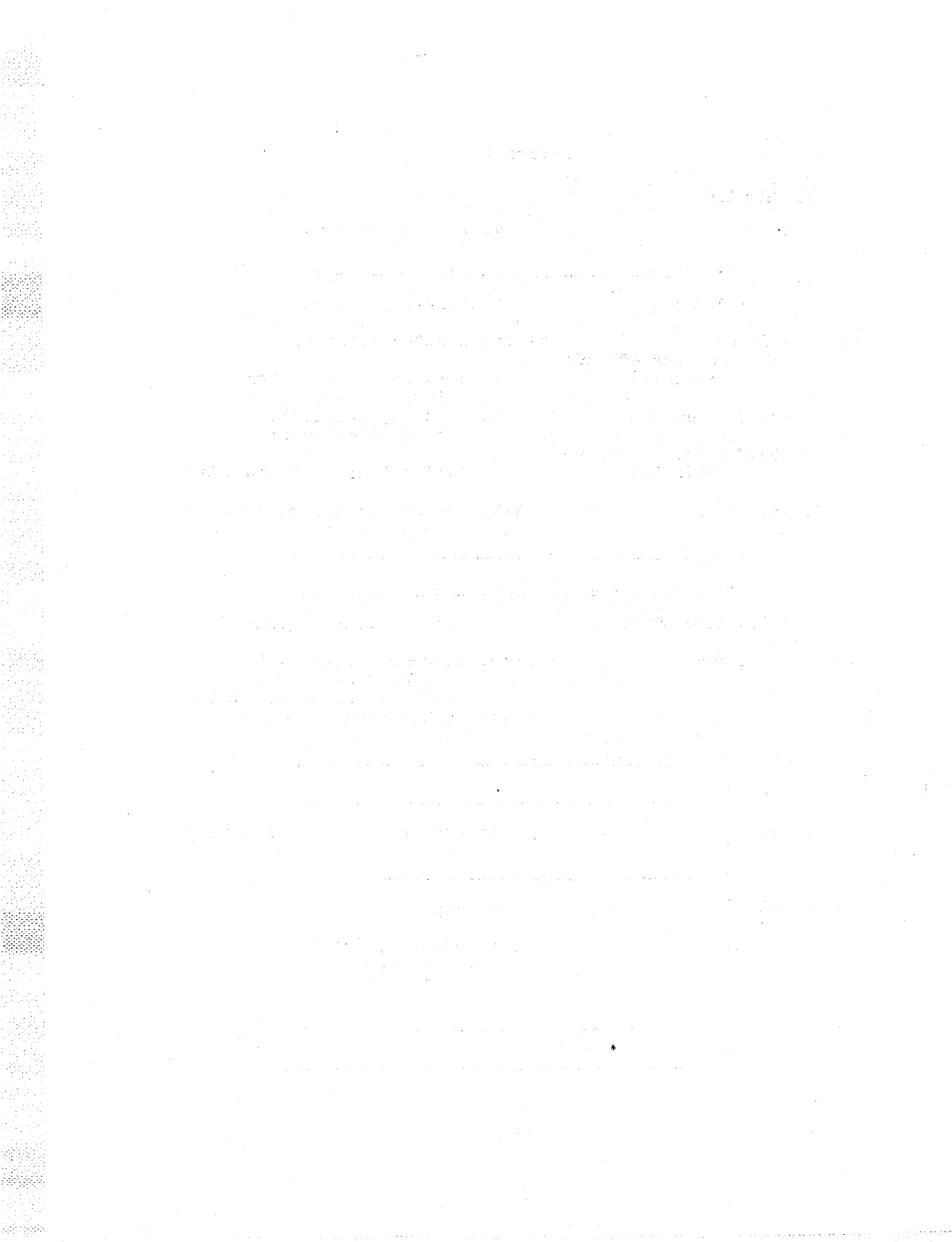
Tā xùnhuà de nèiróng yě gēn biérén bùyíyàng. Biérén xùnhuà de nèiróng dōu chàbuduō, búshì shuō kōngjūn zěnme zhòngyào jiùshì shuō yíge qīngnián duì guójiā yǒu xiē shénme zérèn. Yàoburán jiùshì shuō wǒmen shénme shíhou kěyǐ dǎbài gòngfěi huídào Dàlù qù. Kěshi Gāo shàojiàng de xùnhuà wánquán bùyíyàng. Tā shuōle hěn duō kōngjūnlǐ de gùshi. Měige gùshi dōu hěn yǒuyìsi. Hòulái tā hái shuōle shuō, Táinán jīdì de gōngzuò qíngxíng. Tāde huà tīngzhe hǎoxiàng hěn píngcháng, dōu shì yìxiē xiǎo gùshi, kěshi dōu hěn yǒu dàoilǐ. Xuéyuánmen tīngwánle tāde huà, yǒude shuō xīwang Gāo shàojiàng chángcháng lái xùnhuà, yǒude shuō xīwang bìyè yǐhòu néng dào tāde jīdì qù gōngzuò.

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. He's a scientist, and is presently a senior instructor in a military school; his rank is very high.
2. The commie bandit broadcast said a lot of people were missing; I think most of those people have escaped.
3. The new type of aircraft is not only very maneuverable, but also climbs very fast.
4. In an air battle, I wouldn't mind the risk even if there were a lot of enemy aircraft--I would get into the (air) battle.
5. Can the President and Vice-President of the United States wear uniforms? Do they have rank?
6. Please think it over--you'd be better off not to turn us down. We need capable men like you.
7. I suddenly discovered that there were two enemy aircraft coming, and immediately went up to join in (jiārù: see Lesson 11) the air battle. As it turned out, the enemy aircraft were hit and their pilots burned to death.
8. Although he was unfortunately injured during air combat, he became a hero.
9. My mission was to search rooms in this city; though he refused to let me enter his room, I went in anyway and searched it, and as a result discovered a lot of machine gun parts in his room.
10. You'd better either surrender or else beat a fast retreat--these are the only two alternatives you have. (Aside from these two routes, there is no other route you can take.) I hope you'll give it some thought.
11. As soon as that aircraft took off it developed (engine) trouble. Tell me, who was responsible for that?
12. When I first saw him, he was a little fatter than (he is) now. He's a little too tired now.

13. That scientist has just recently escaped from the Chinese mainland. He said he took the opportunity to escape one day when the commie bandits were in the midst of a celebration and no one was paying attention.
14. Last week I went to visit a naval officers school. Their facilities were really good. I ran into a few instructors, and they were all quite capable.
15. Last week I met (by chance) a young lady in New York--her hair was black. Yesterday I ran into her again, and her hair had turned yellow.
16. The last time I went on a long(-distance) trip, I suddenly developed car trouble (the car suddenly developed trouble) on the road. At the time I got really worried, because there weren't any garages around.
17. Do you like (studying) science? I think the most important thing in science is accuracy--even the slightest error won't do.
18. While searching around the mountain peak, I found a person that looked like he had burned to death. He was really unfortunate.
19. His rank was written on his I.D. card; he also said he had been an instructor at a naval school.
20. The President(s) and Vice-President(s) have shouldered many duties. I think the responsibilities of the President and Vice-President are terribly important.



## Lesson 10

I. VOCABULARY

331. ān V: install, set up  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 331.1 ānshang V: install, set up
- 33X. zhànluè N/Att: strategy/strategic  
 33X.1 Zhànluè Kōngjūn  
 zhǐhuībù N: Strategic Air Command  
 (SAC)
- 33X.2 zhànshù N: tactics, tactical,  
 tactical maneuver
- 33X.3 Zhànshù Kōngjūn  
 zhǐhuībù N: Tactical Air Command (TAC)
332. zhēnchá V/N: reconnoitre/reconnaissance  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 332.1 zhēncháji N: reconnaissance aircraft
333. chénggōng V/SV/N: succeed, accomplish,  
 achieve/successful/  
 success, accomplishment,  
 achievement  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
334. jìxude A: continually, continuously  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
335. jiǎodù N: angle
336. jiěshi V/N: explain, interpret/  
 explanation,  
 interpretation  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_

336. jiěshi (continued)  
336.1 liǎojiě V/N: understand, comprehend/  
understanding
- c. \_\_\_\_\_
- d. \_\_\_\_\_
337. qiǎnshuǐtǐng N: submarine
338. zhíshēngjī N: helicopter
339. jùlí CV/N: from (a place)/distance
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
340. fā míng V/N: invent/invention
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
341. fāngxiàng N: direction, bearing
342. huǒlì N: firepower
343. gāoshèpào N: anti-aircraft artillery  
(AAA)
344. gōngkāi SV/A: open, public/openly,  
publicly
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
345. léidá N: radar  
345.1 léidáwǎng N: radar network
346. liǎobuqǐ IE: excellent!, terrific!,  
amazing!
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
347. luópán N: compass  
347.1 zhīnánzhēn N: compass
348. mángmù A: blindly
- a. \_\_\_\_\_



348. mángmù (continued)  
348.1 mángmù fēixíng Ph: blind flight; fly blind
- 34X. míngcí N: term, noun
349. néngjiàndù N: visibility
350. bèi CV: by (expresses passive voice)
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
351. bìmiǎn V: avoid
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
352. shìyàn V/N: experiment, test
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
353. suǒ-V-de Patt: that which was V-ed  
353.1 tā suǒjiǎngde Ph: what he said, what he talked about
354. sīshāng N/V: casualties ("dead and wounded")/suffer casualties
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
355. dìxíng N: terrain
356. dìng\* V: fix, set, determine
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 356.1 dìng fāngxiàng VO: take a bearing, find a direction
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 356.2 dìngxiàngqì N: direction finder
357. cèliáng V/N: survey, measure
- a. \_\_\_\_\_

357. cèliáng (continued)

b. \_\_\_\_\_

358. zǐdàn	N: ammunition, cartridge(s) (M: fā)
358.1 qīngqìdàn	N: hydrogen bomb
358.2 fēidàn	N: missile
358.3 zhōují dǎodàn	N: ICBM (dǎodàn - guided missile)
358.4 yuánzǐdàn	N: atomic bomb (yuánzǐ - atom)
359. wèizhi	N: position, location
359.1 dìwei	N: place, location; social standing, position
359.2 wèizi	N: seat
360. yuánlǐ	N: principle, axiom, theory

NOTES

- (331) a. Why wasn't a radio installed in that aircraft?
- (332) a. We sent an aircraft to reconnoitre the enemy position(s).  
b. The results of that reconnaissance were pretty good.
- (333) a. Has France conducted a successful atomic (bomb) test?  
b. He carried off this deal (transaction) very successfully.
- (334) a. Please read straight through (without stopping).
- (336) a. Would you please explain the meaning of that sentence.  
b. I'm not satisfied with his explanation.  
c. I don't understand what you mean.  
d. My understanding of this matter is inadequate.  
(Or: I don't have a thorough enough understanding of this matter.)

- (339) a. Philly is a hundred and fifty-some (English) miles from here.
- (340) a. Who invented the airplane?  
b. What new inventions have we had this year?
- (344) a. This is a public matter, not a confidential one.  
b. I told him very openly that I didn't support his views.
- (346) a. This Mr. Li is really amazing!
- (348) a. One should not believe everything he hears.  
(Or: "A person shouldn't blindly listen to the talk of others.")
- (350) a. Our submarine wasn't hit by the enemy (fire, depth charge, etc.)
- (351) a. What will our aircraft have to do to avoid being discovered by the enemy?
- (352) a. Where did the U.S. conduct atomic (bomb) testing?  
b. We've conducted quite a few experiments on this principle.
- (354) a. What were our casualties in the air battle yesterday?  
b. How many casualties did the enemy suffer?
- (356) a. I've set next year for my trip to England.  
b. Did he find the correct direction? (Or: Is the bearing he took correct?)
- (357) a. We can use aircraft to survey the terrain there.  
b. How many people did we send on this survey (expedition)?

II. STORY

Shàng Kè

Sūn jiàoguān cóngqián shì yíwèi yǒumíng de kōngjūn jūnguān. Tā shì jūnshì xuéxiào bìyè de. Búdàn duì zhànshù hěn yǒuyánjiu, bìngqiě duì dìxíng, qìxiàng, cèliáng, shénmede yě fēicháng yǒuyánjiu. Xiànzài tā duì gèzhǒng kēxué fāngmian de xīn fāmíng yě tèbié zhùyì.

Yǒu yìtiān shàng kè de shíhou, tā dài zhe hěn duō túbiǎo gēn xiàngpiān, shénmede, jìnle kèshì, zhàn zài táishang shuō: "Shàng yí cì wǒ suǒjiǎngde shì zhíshēngjī gēn pēnshèjī de xìngnéng. Shéi yǒu wèntí?" Xuéyuánmen méiyǒu yíge rén jǔ shǒu, dàgài dōu méiyǒu wèntí. Guòle yìhuǐr, Sūn jiàoguān shuō: "Chén Xīng-hàn, nǐ kěyǐ bǎ zhíshēngjī de xìngnéng shuō yìshuō ma? Chén Xīng-hàn gǎnjǐn zhànqilai bǎ zhíshēngjī de xìngnéng shuōle yí cì, shuōwánle, Sūn jiàoguān jiu ràng tā zuòxiále. Bìngqiě shuō, tā shuōde hěn qīngchū. Hòulái, Sūn jiàoguān jiu jìxù wàng xià jiǎng, xiàng yuánzǐdàn, huǒjiàn, fēidàn, léidá, shénmede. Xuéyuánmen dōu juéde hěn yǒuyìsi. Tā shuō yuánzǐdàn gēn léidá dōu shì kēxuéshang liǎobuqǐ de fāmíng. Yòng léidá kěyǐ zhēnchá fēijī, yě kěyǐ zhēnchá qiánshuǐtǐng lízhe jībǎi yīnglǐ yuǎn, dōu néng zhēncháchulai... Tā yòu jiǎngle hěn duō guānyu yuánzǐdàn gēn léidá de yuánlǐ. Suǐrán hěn shēn, kěshì jiěshi de hěn qīngchū. Xuéyuánmen dōu néng míngbai.

Hòulai tā jiǎngdao fēidàn gēn huǒjiàn de shíhou, tā xiān jiǎng fēidàn gēn huǒjiàn de yuánlǐ. Jiǎngde hěn zìxì, huàle hěn duō tú, ránhòu tā yòu náchulai hěn duō zhāng shìyàn fēidàn de xiàngpiānr ràng xuéyuánmen chuánzhe kàn. Hòulai, Sūn jiàoguān shuō xiànzài nǐmen dōu yīnggāi duì huǒjiàn gēn fēidàn hěn qīngchu le.

Sūn jiàoguān shuō kēxué yuèláiyuèjìnbù. Chúle zhèxiē xīn de fāmíng yǐwài, zài jūnhuǒ fāngmian yě gēn cóngqián bù-yíyàng le. Cóngqián zhànzhēng de shíhou, dàjiā yòng zìdàn, pàodàn huòshi zhādàn shénmede, jiu juéde huǒlì hěn dà le. Kěshi xiànzài ne, hái yǒu hěn duō gèng lihai de wǔqì zhèngzai mímì shìyàn ne. Chénggōng yǐhòu jiu kěyǐ gōngkāi le.

Sūn jiàoguān jiǎngdao zhèli, yǒu yíge xuéyuán jǔ shǒu wènle yíge wèntí. Tā shuō: "Tīngshuō Měiguó shìyàn yìzhǒng fēijī, búyòng jiàshìyuán jiàshǐ, bùxiǎode chénggōngle méiyou." Sūn jiàoguān shuō yǐjīng chénggōngle. Nà shízài shì yìzhǒng liǎobuqǐ de fāmíng, yàoshi yòng nàzhǒng fēijī dào díren de dìqū qù zhēnchá, kěyǐ bimiǎn hěn duō wēixiǎn. Yīnwei píngcháng de zhēncháji yídìng děi yòng jiàshìyuán jiàshǐ, yàoshi bèi díren de gāoshèpào dǎzhòng, nàme jiàshìyuán kěnéng luòzai díren dìqū, yěxǔ yǒu sīshāng de wēixiǎn. Kěshi zhèzhǒng búyòng jiàshìyuán jiàshǐ de fēijī ne, dāngrán kěyǐ bimiǎn zhèxiē wēixiǎn le. Zhèzhǒng fēijīlǐ ānzhe gèzhǒng zìdòng de shèbèi, kěyǐ bǎ díren de huódòng, yòng zhàoxiàngjī zhàole xiàng dài huilai. Zhèizhǒng

fēijī kěyǐ búyòng màoxiǎn bǎ qíngbào dài huilai, suǒyǐ yòngchū jiānglái gèng duō.

Kuài yào xià kè de shíhou, Sūn jiàoguān gāosong xuéyuán shuō, "Xià yíci nimen dōu dào nàjiān tèbié kèshì qù shàng kè. Wǒ yào jiǎng mángmù fēixíng gēn dīng fāngxiàng. Nàjiān tèbié kèshìlǐ yǒu luópán, zhǐnánzhēn, dīngxiàngqì dēngdēng yīngdāng yòng de dōngxi, bǐjiào fāngbian yìdiǎn. Zài xià yí kèlǐ yǒu hěn duō xīn de míngcí, xiàng néngjiàndù, jiǎodù, dìwei, jùlí, shénmede. Yǒude cóngqián zài zhōngxué xuéguo, yǒude méixuéguo. Nimen zuìhǎo xiān yùbeiyubei. Xià yíci shàng kè de shíhou, wǒ jiǎngwánle jiu kěyǐ liànxi le."

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. The compass was invented by a Chinese. Using a compass, one can find a direction.
2. For a long time I conducted experiments based on the principle he discussed, and was finally successful.
3. I don't know the principle behind missiles--could you explain it for me?
4. Look at those people over there, holding a compass--what are they up to? Are they surveying the terrain?
5. That recon aircraft was shot down by anti-aircraft artillery, killing and wounding many men on board.
6. That pilot is really terrific--he understands everything and his standing is very high.
7. Many things are installed on that recon aircraft, such as compass, direction finder, etc.

8. Our firepower is really great; if the enemy comes, they won't be able to avoid casualties.
9. I don't understand any of those terms he used (mentioned), please explain them to me.
10. On the radar I discovered several black things--black dots--and thought there might be a reconnaissance aircraft, or else a submarine, in the surrounding area(s).
11. After our anti-aircraft artillery shot down the enemy reconnaissance aircraft, the enemy pilot volunteered a lot of intelligence (voluntarily told us...).
12. Yesterday the (military) instructor who teaches surveying covered (alluded to) a lot of new terms, such as visibility, angle, distance, etc. His explanations were all very clear.
13. The officer that escaped from the Chicom forces told everyone publicly that his joining the service had been involuntary.
14. That factory is a military factory. All the ammunition, artillery shells, and bombs used by our forces are manufactured in this factory.
15. Although firepower is very important during combat, tactics are also very important. If tactics are poor, success is doubtful (not necessarily succeed).
16. That pilot said that flying blind is difficult, but that making blind landings is even more difficult.
17. Once, when riding in a helicopter, I felt a bit dizzy and couldn't orient myself (couldn't make out the directions).
18. He's presently studying the atomic bomb. He says he'd like to invent a weapon with tremendous firepower some day--I hope he'll be successful.
19. Radar is used on the highway to measure the speed of automobiles; when you are driving along a highway, you have to pay special attention.
20. I installed a compass in the car. Always knowing the direction, no matter where I go, is, I feel, very convenient.





## Lesson 11

## I. VOCABULARY

361. zhēnkōngguǎn(r) N: vacuum tube
362. zhěnglǐ V: arrange, straighten out,  
put in order
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
363. jízhōng V/N: concentrate, bring  
together, converge,  
focus on/concentration  
(of fire, troops, etc.)
- 363.1 jízhōng duìxíng VO/N: close formation
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
364. qítā(de) N: (the) other(s), the rest
365. jiàzhi N: value, worth
- 365.1 yǒujiàzhi SV: valuable, worthwhile
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
366. jiārù V: join, participate in,  
enter
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
367. jìn chǎng VO: enter the field, stage,  
or hall; enter the  
airfield
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
368. qǐngqiú\* V/N: request (formally from the  
proper authorities)
- 368.1 yāoqiú V/N: demand, request, call for
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
369. zhōubō\* N: frequency
- 369.1 zhōulǚ\* N: frequency
- 369.2 zhōubōbiǎo N: frequency chart

L. 11

370. chū cuò VO: make mistakes  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
371. chūfēi A: unless  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
372. zhuǎngào\* V: relay (a message)  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
373. zhǔnquè SV: accurate, exact, precise  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
374. zhòngyào SV: important, significant  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
375. chóngfu V/N: repeat/repetition  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 375.1 chóngjiǎng V: repeat, say again  
 375.2 chóngshuō V: repeat, say again
376. jùshuō A: it's said that, "they"  
 say, it's alleged;  
 allegedly  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 376.1 jù X shuō Ph: based on what X said,  
 according to X  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
377. fā huà VO: transmit (by voice)  
 377.1 fāhuàjī N: (voice) transmitter
378. hángkōng\* N/Att: aviation, air navigation/  
 air, aerial, airborne,  
 airmail, flight  
 378.1 hángkōng lùxiàn N: flight route or traffic  
 pattern  
 378.2 hángxiàn N: traffic pattern  
 378.3 hánglù N: flight route

379. xiàn N: thread, string, wire, line  
 379.1 dìxiàn N: ground (wire)  
 379.2 tiānxiàn N: antenna
380. huáxíngdào N: taxiway
381. gānrǎo V/N: interfere with, disturb/  
 interference, disturbance
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
382. gāodù N: altitude  
 382.1 gāokōng N: high altitude
383. kǒuyīn N: accent
384. kùnnan SV/N: difficult, hard/  
 difficulty, hardship,  
 trouble
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
385. kōngzhōng PW: in the air; airborne,  
 aerial
- 385.1 shàngkōng PW: overhead (of)
386. guóyǔ N: Mandarin ("the national  
 language")  
 386.1 guānhuà N: Mandarin ("the language of  
 the officials")  
 [more recent PRC term is 'pǔtōnghuà']
387. liánluò V/N: make or maintain contact  
 or liaison/contact,  
 liaison
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
388. lǐnghángjī N: lead aircraft  
 388.1 lǐnghángyuán N: navigator
389. pánxuán V: circle (in the air)
- a. \_\_\_\_\_

L. 11

390. bǎochí  
 390.1 bǎohù  
 390.2 wéichí
- V: maintain  
 V/N: protect/protection  
 V: maintain, sustain, preserve
391. biànhuà
- V/N: change, transform/change, transformation
- a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
392. píngfēi
- V/N: fly level/level flight
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
393. dǎ bǎ
- VO/N: shoot at practice targets/target practice
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 393.1 kōngzhōng dǎbǎ
- N: aerial target practice
394. diànchí  
 394.1 gāndiàn(chí/píng)  
 394.2 diànpíng  
 394.3 chōngdiàn
- N: battery  
 N: dry cell battery  
 N: battery  
 N: charge (with electricity)
395. tuōlí
- V: leave, break off (away) from
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 395.1 tuōlí hángxian  
 395.2 tuōlí hángkōng lǜxiàn
- Ph: leave the traffic pattern  
 Ph: leave the traffic pattern
396. tōngzhī \*
- V/N: notify, inform (units, etc., of equal echelon)/notice(s), notification
- a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 396.1 tōnghuà
- V/N: communicate/communication (radio-telephone)
- a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_

397. cìshù N: number of times (of occurrence)
398. yíxià A: below, under, less than  
N: the following
- 398.1 yíběi PW: north of
- 398.2 yíshàng A: above, over, more than  
N: the preceding
- 398.3 yídōng PW: east of
399. yíbiàn \* NU-M: once, one time  
399.1 qǐng zài shuō yíbiàn \* Ph: please say again
400. yuányīn N: reason, cause (not purpose)

NOTES

- (362) a. When I've got it straightened out I'll give you a report on it.
- (363) a. Please get the officers assembled--the Vice-President is coming to give a training lecture.
- (365) a. Do you think it's worthwhile to do that?
- (366) a. He joined the Air Force.
- (367) a. The aircraft has already entered the field.
- (368) a. I did all the things he requested me to.  
b. I don't have any requests.
- (370) a. I never make mistakes. (Or: I've never made a mistake.)
- (371) a. Unless it should rain I will definitely go.
- (372) a. Would you please relay my intentions to him.
- (373) a. His pronunciation of Mandarin is very accurate.
- (374) a. Radio communications are very important to aviation. (Or: Radio communications play a very important part in aviation.)

L. 11

- (375) a. Please repeat it once.
- (376) a. They say he was once a military instructor with the rank of Colonel.
- b. According to him, something has gone wrong with this aircraft and now it won't fly (can't be flown).
- (381) a. We've never jammed enemy broadcasts.
- b. When I listened to the radio communications, there was too much interference.
- (384) a. He's now leading a very difficult life. (Or: He's in very difficult straits nowadays.)
- b. I didn't have a bit of trouble (difficulty).
- (387) a. Because of the war I haven't been in very close contact with my family. (...haven't had much contact with...)
- b. The radio op on board the aircraft made contact with the people on the ground.
- (389) a. That aircraft has been circling here for a long time now.
- (391) a. There has been a considerable change in the weather.
- b. His life is undergoing a considerable change.
- (392) a. When you were in level flight was it very smooth?
- (393) a. They're airborne, doing target practice now.
- (395) a. You may leave the frequency.
- (396) a. Please notify him that there will be a meeting tomorrow.
- b. The office gave me a notification.
- c. Because the weather was bad, it was difficult to understand when communicating by voice.
- d. We listen in on enemy communications every day.

(398) a. Can persons under 18 join the Air Force?

b. I'll sell it [if I can get] over \$30. (Or: I'll [only] sell it for over \$30.)

## II. STORY

### Liànxí Shōutīng

Zài kōngjūn lītou, Chén Xīng-hàn jiānglái de rēnwu, zhǔyào de shì wúxiàndiàn shōutīng de gōngzuò. Jùshuō, píngcháng yíge xué wúxiàndiàn tōngxùn de xuéyuán, chūle xuéxí zěnme ān tiānxiàn, dìxiàn, huàn diànchí, jiǎnchá wúxiàndiàn zhēnkōngguǎnr yīwài, bìngqiě xūyào suíshí liànxí shōutīng "Zhōnggòng Rénmín Kōngjūn" de tōnghuà. Běnlái Xīng-hàn cānjiā kōngjūn de mùdì jiùshì xīwang zuò zhèzhǒng gōngzuò. Tā liànxíle jǐcì shōutīng yǐhòu, gèng juéde zhèzhǒng rēnwu, búdàn fēicháng zhòngyào, bìngqiě yě bǐ shòu jīběn jiàoliàn yǒuyìsi duōle.

Měicì zài nàge jīdì liànxí shōutīng, zǒng yǒu jǐge xuéyuán zài yíkuàir gōngzuò. Tāmen yígeyígede dàizhe ěrjī, duìzhǔn zhōubō, ránhòu ānānjìngjìngde shōutīng. Yǒu shíhou, jǐge xuéyuán tóngshí shōutīng yíge tōngxùn. Yǒu shíhou, tāmen fēnkāi gōngzuò, yòng bùtóng de zhōubō, shōutīng bùtóng de tōnghuà. Bùguǎn zěnme yàng, tāmen yìtīngdao Zhōnggòng fēijī gēn tǎtái liánluo, huòshi fēijī gēn fēijī liánluo, yě bùguǎn nàcì de tōnghuà zài jūnshìshang zhòngyào búzhòngyào, tāmen zǒng xiǎng fázi bǎ tōnghuà tīngwán, ránhòu dàjiā zài bǎ shōutīng de jiéguǒ zhěnglǐhao, sònggei qíngbào rényuán.

Kōngjūn tōnghuà nèiróng hěn duō. Cóng fēijī qífēi dào jiàngluò, lītou bāokuò huáxíng, qífēi, tuōlí hángxian, píngfēi, zhuǎnwān, jiārù duìxíng, gēn sànkāi fēixíng, jízhōng fēixíng, zuìhòu dào fēijī jìn chǎng, zài pǎodàoshang jiàngluò, dēngdēng de shìqing, dōu xūyào yòng wúxiàndiàn liánluo.

Chúle zhèxiē shìqing yǐwài, qítā de huódong, xiàng zhàndòu liànxi, hōngzhà liànxi, tiào sǎn biǎoyǎn gēn kōngzhōng dǎ bǎ liànxi, dēngdēng, dōu shì yǒujiàzhi de jūnshì qíngbào, suǒyǐ shōutīng zhèzhǒng tōnghuà yě shì zuì yàojin de gōngzuò. Měicì yùjian zhèyàng de qíngxing, shōutīng de xuéyuán dōu jízhōng jǐngshen, zìxì de tīng, xīwang néng bǎ suǒyǒude tōnghuà nèiróng dōu jìxialai.

Fēijī gēn dímian liánluo, huòshi fēijī gēn fēijī tōnghuà de shíhou, rúguǒ tiānqi hǎo, dàgài shēngyīn jiu hěn qīngchu, shōutīng méiyǒu shénme kùnnan, kěyǐ búbì chóngfu. Kěshi yǒu hěn duō qíngxing, huòshi yīnwei tiānqi biànhuà, huòshi yīnwei qítā zhōubō de gānrǎo, chángcháng tīngjian "Zài shuō yíbiàn," "Qǐng chóngfu," "Qǐng zài shuō," "Qǐng chóng shuō," shénmede. Yǒu shíhou, shōutīng de rén zǎojiu tīngqīngchule, kěshi tōnghuà de rén hái zài shàngkōng "chóngfu" ne. Yìbānde shuō, měicì fēijī tōnghuà xūyào "chóngfu" de mùdì shì xīwang bīcǐ tōnghuà zhǔnquè. Yàoburán, fēijī jiu bùgǎn suǐbiàn dòngzuo.

Píngcháng, tōnghuà wèishénme xūyào chóngfu ne? Dìyíge yuányīn kěnéng shì zài yíge dìqū de shàngkōng, tiānqi



biànhuà tài kuài, shōuyīnjī lītou záyīn tài duō,  
 tīngbuqīngchū. Dièrge yuányīn yěxǔ shì yīnwei zhuāngào  
 xiāoxi, huòshi zhuāngào mìnglíng, bǎ tōnghuà chóngfū yíxià.  
 cái búhuì chū cuò; dìsānge yuányīn kěnéng shì yīnwei  
 liǎngge kǒuyīn hěn zhòng de rén shuō guóyǔ bīcǐ bùnéng  
 wánquán lìkè liǎojiě, suǒyǐ děi chóngfū jīcǐ. Gēnjù  
 Xīng-hàn liànxi shōutīng de jīngyan, zhèyàng de qīngxing  
 zuì pǔtōng. Shuō shízàide, tāmen chóngfū de cǐshu yuè duō,  
 yuè róngyi tīngde qīngchū. Nàme, shōutīng de jiéguǒ  
 dāngrán yě jiù gèng hǎo le.

Shōutīng liǎngjiǎ fēijī tōnghuà róngyi; shōutīng  
 yīfēnduì yīshàng de fēijī tōnghuà bǐjiào fùzá, zhège dào  
 hěn qīngchū. Yīnwei rúguǒ fēijī duō le, línghángjī de  
 měiyíge mìnglíng dōu xūyào tèbié xiǎoxīn. Bīfang shuō, yǒu  
 yíci shōutīng kōngzhōng dǎ bǎ de shíhou, línghángjī yāoqiú  
 dàjiā bǎochí yíding de jùlí, yāoqiú dàjiā yòng zhǐding de  
 sùdù pánxuán, zài zhǐding de gāodù miáozhǔn, wǎng yíding de  
 fāngxiàng zhuǎnwān. Cóng zhèxiē tōnghuà lītou dàgài kěyǐ  
 yánjiuchulai tāmen fēixíng de jìshù, dǎ bǎ de xùnliàn, gēn  
 shèjīde zhǔnquè bùzhǔnquè, dēngdēng.

Xiàng zhèyàng de liànxi, Xīng-hàn yuè tīng yuè  
 yǒuxìngqu. Tā xiǎng jiānglái zhèngshì kāishǐ gōngzuò yǐhòu  
 yíding huì rèxīnde fúwù.

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. He's a radio op, and is always listening in on radio (station) broadcasts from different places. They say he used to work on a lead aircraft. I think his work is very worthwhile.
2. Yesterday when we were communicating I repeated quite a few times, but the radio op on the lead aircraft still couldn't hear me. Maybe my transmitter is out of order. I think I'll have to dismantle it and get it straightened out.
3. Mr. Smith's Mandarin is an excellent example (case in point). (The way) he speaks, his pronunciation, are very accurate; there isn't the slightest American accent.
4. Unless you have a special reason, you'd best not request leave. The more leave you request, the tougher it will be on you. If it exceeds five times, you'll have to spend (some) more time studying next year.
5. When paratroops bail out, the aircraft must without fail maintain a fixed altitude; otherwise, something could easily go wrong. If I (had to) bail out, I would certainly get nervous.
6. The lead aircraft has been taxiing out for some time now, but hasn't left the ground (taken off) yet. I don't know what's wrong with it. You'd better get in touch (jiēchu) with it.
7. The antennas and ground (lines) are both fine, and there's nothing wrong with the vacuum tubes. How can it be that I can't hear the radio (station) broadcast? Maybe the frequency isn't set accurately.
8. I received a notification inviting me to (attend) a meeting in New York on the first of next month. I plan to go. Please relay (the message) to them that I will definitely go unless the weather should turn bad.

9. Vacuum tubes, batteries, and frequency charts are all very important. If you run a check on them prior to take off, I don't think you'll be likely to make a mistake.
10. Yesterday when he was putting his things in order, he put the important things in a box and threw away all the unimportant ones.
11. After joining the Chinese Air Force, Mr. Gao came to feel (juézhe) that there was no value in working for the Chinese A.F. Later on he escaped, and presently has no ties at all with the Chinese.
12. There are three aircraft in level flight overhead. They're maintaining a fixed altitude and distance.
13. His pronunciation isn't too accurate. When we communicate, I can't understand (hear clearly), even when there isn't static or interference. Once he said "tiānxiàn" and it sounded to me like "tiāntiān."
14. When those aircraft are flying overhead, they are in close formation, but later on when they make their approach and taxi, they no longer maintain close formation.
15. I think being a navigator on a lead aircraft would be very important and moreover, particularly worthwhile. I don't know if I have what it takes (the capability) to be a navigator.
16. In my hometown, persons under 18 are not at liberty to do whatever they please, but (if they are) over 18, driving and drinking are allowed. Do you know what the reason for this is? I don't know what the situation is like in other places.
17. In the last few days, there have been radical changes in the weather. I don't know what's going on. Reports from the weather station have always been very accurate in the past, but these past few days they've been constantly mistaken.
18. My friend urged me to join the Navy, but I don't want to leave the Air Force. I think it's worth (my) while to work in the Air Force.

L. 11

19. He's a receiver specialist (He has specially studied..).  
If you have any questions about antennas, vacuum tubes, frequency, or whatever, you can go ask him.
20. Mandarin is very pleasant to the ear, and if the person speaking has no local accent, it sounds even better. Yesterday I ran into a Chinese student; he said a few words of Mandarin, and it sounded very pleasant--I asked him to repeat over and over again (quite a few times).



L. 12

409. ruǎn SV: soft (opp. yìng, item 429)  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
410. gāoshēn SV: deep, profound, abstruse  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
411. lǐlùn N: theory  
 [411.1 (zài) lǐlùnshang] Ph: in theory, theoretically
412. liàowàngtái N: observation tower (post),  
 lookout tower (post)
413. mínyòng Att: (for) civil (use)  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
414. (duì)...yǒubǎwò SV/A: know what one is doing,  
 know how to handle  
 something/with complete  
 confidence, in full  
 control of the situation  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
415. pū V: spread out (on the  
 ground, on a table,  
 etc.)
416. shuǐní N: concrete  
 416.1 yánghuī N: cement
417. shuōmíng V/N/Att: explain, illustrate/  
 explanation, illustration/  
 explanatory, illustrative  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 417.1 shuōmíngshū N: instruction book(let),  
 technical manual,  
 playbill, program
418. dǎ léi VO: thunder (peels)  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_

418. dǎ léi (continued)  
 418.1 dǎ shǎn VO: lightning (flashes)  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
419. tàn V: seek, search out, explore  
 419.1 tànzhàodēng N: searchlight, spotlight
420. ...de huà Patt: (makes the preceding hypothetical, e.g.,  
 xià yǔ de huà - "were it to rain," "should it rain")  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 420.1 rúguǒ (N) V de huà Patt: if (N) should V, if (N) were to V  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 420.2 yàoshi (N) V de huà Patt: if (N) should V, if (N) were to V  
 (see item 420.1)  
 c. \_\_\_\_\_
421. dēngbiāo N: beacon  
 421.1 jīchǎng dēngbiāo N: airfield beacon  
 421.2 pǎodào dēngbiāo N: runway beacon (vs. pǎodàodēng - runway lights)
422. tiānkōng N: sky
423. duǒ V: avoid, keep away from, shun, hide  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 423.1 duǒkai RC: keep out of the way (of), steer clear (of)  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 423.2 duǒ yǔ VO: stay out of the rain, take shelter from the rain

424. zǒngéryánzhī IE: to sum it up, in a word,  
to put it briefly
425. dù M: degree(s)  
425.1 língdù de tiānqi Ph: zero-degree weather
426. wùdiǎn VO: fall behind schedule,  
be late (train, bus,  
airplane, etc.)

a. \_\_\_\_\_

427. yā V/N: press down, weigh down,  
oppress, suppress  
(emotion), hold or detain  
(a person)/pressure
- 427.1 qìyā N: atmospheric pressure
- 427.2 qìyābiǎo N: barometer
- 427.3 yālì N: pressure
- 427.4 yālìbiǎo N: pressure gauge
- [427.5 xuěyā] N: blood pressure
- [427.6 diànyā] N: voltage
428. yìchu N: profit, benefit, gain,  
advantage
- 428.1 lìyi N: profit, benefit, gain,  
advantage
429. yìng SV: hard, stiff (opp. ruǎn,  
item 409)

a. \_\_\_\_\_

430. yúshì A: then, thereupon, so, thus,  
thereafter

a. \_\_\_\_\_

431. yúndǐng N: cloud crest, cloud tops
- 431.1 yúndǐ N: cloud base

NOTES

(401) a. His illness gradually improved. (Or: He gradually recovered from his illness.)

(402) a. That's a new-style building.

b. That building is very well built.



- (403) a. This school doesn't stress science.
- (409) a. This kind of thing is very soft.
- (410) a. His speech is too abstruse--it's very difficult to comprehend. (Or: The things he said were too...)
- (413) a. Is this airfield for military or civilian use?  
(Or: Is this a military or civilian airfield?)
- (414) a. I know how to handle that matter.  
b. Do you know what you're doing?
- (417) a. There's no caption at the base of this picture  
(map, chart, photograph, etc.).  
b. This problem is very complex (or complicated), and it's hard to explain.
- (418) a. Although there was thunder, it didn't rain.  
b. A bolt of lightning flashed brightly. (Or: There was a bright flash of lightning.)
- (420) a. You should exercise often--otherwise you could easily get sick.  
b. If I had the money I would buy it. (Or: If I should have some money [when the time comes], then I'll buy it.)  
c. If I had the time I would go. (Or: If I should have some free time, then I'll go.)
- (423) a. He's hiding in the room.  
b. There's a car coming--quick, get out of the way!  
c. Everyone's there taking shelter from the rain.
- (426) a. Recently the trains have frequently been behind schedule.
- (429) a. That chunk of bread was bought quite a few days ago--it's already hard.
- (430) a. I told him not to come; therefore, he wouldn't come. (Or: I asked him not to come, whereupon he declined to come.)

II. STORY

Jīchǎng Shèbèi

Yǒu yíci Chén Xīng-hàn gēn tā mǔqīn yíkuàir dào fēijīchǎng qù jiē yíge qīnqi, fēijī wùdiǎnle. Nàge shíhou tiānqi hěn hǎo, Xīng-hàn jiu chèn zhège jīhui dàizhe tā mǔqīn dào liàowàngtáishang qù kànkàn jīchǎng de shèbèi.

Chén lǎo tàitai suīrán zuòguo fēijī, kěshi cónglái méizhùyiguo jīchǎng lǐtou de jiànzhù, dāngrán yě bùzhīdao nàxiē jiànzhù yǒu shénme yòngchū.

Xīng-hàn yòng shǒu zhǐzhe gěi tā mǔqīn kàn, gěi tā mǔqīn jiěshi. Tā shuō nàbian nàge jiào tǎtái, tóngshí jiu bǎ tǎtái de yòngchū jiǎngle jiǎng. Yòu shuō zhège shì qìxiàngtái, nàge shì fēijīkù, zhège shì xièhuòchù, dēngdēng. Yòu shuō nàge lóulǐ shì léidá, shì xīnshì de shèbèi. Chén tàitai zhǐzhe yíge dēng wèn nàge dēng shì bushì tànzhaodēng. Xīng-hàn shuō búshi tànzhaodēng, shì jīchǎng dēngbiāo, shì biǎoshì jīchǎng dìwei yòngde. Jīchǎnglǐ chúle jīchǎng dēngbiāo yǐwài, hái yǒu pǎodào dēngbiāo, jiùshi pǎodào liǎngbianr nàxiē xiǎo diàndēng.

Hòulái tāmen tándao fēijī qífēi gēn jiàngluò de shǒuxu. Xīng-hàn shuō fēijī qífēi gēn jiàngluò dōu shì tīng tǎtái de zhǐhuī, tǎtái gēnjù dìmiàn de qíngxíng gēn tiānkōng de qíngxíng juédìng fēijī néng bunéng qífēi huòshi jiàngluò. Yǒu shíhou yǒu yíjià fēijī yào jiàngluò, kěshi nàge shíhou bùnéng jiàngluò, tǎtái jiu jiào nàjià fēijī zài shàngkōng

pánxuán yìhuīr. Chén tàitai wèn, shì bushì yīnwei pǎodàoshang yǒu fēijī, bùnéng jiàngluò ne? Xīng-hàn shuō, nà bù yídìng. Jūlì lái shuō, yě kěnéng shì yīnwei yúndǐng tài dī, fēijī zài yúncai shàngtou de shíhou, jīchǎng de jiànzhù, zài fēijīshang kànbuqīngchu. Zhèzhǒng qíngxíng yàoshi jiàngluò, fēicháng wēixiǎn. Zǒngéryánzhī, tàitai dēi bǎ tiānkōng gēn dìmiàn de qíngxíng nòngqīngchu, xiàng shénme fēngxiàng a, fēngsù a, yúndǐng a, néngjiàndù a, nǎtiáo pǎodào kěyǐ jiàngluò a, dēngdēng, dōu shì hěn yào jīnde. Rúguǒ méiyǒu bǎwo de huà, tàitai shì bùxǔ fēijī jiàngluòde. Zhèyìdiǎn tāmen fēicháng xiǎoxīn.

Chén tàitai wèn zhèxiē pǎodào shì bushì dōu shì shuǐní zàode. Xīng-hàn shuō dà fēijīchǎng de pǎodào dōu shì yòng shuǐní zàode. Jùshuō Měiguó de mínyòng xiǎo fēijīchǎng hái yǒu yòng cǎodì pǎodàode. Kěshì cǎodì pǎodào dìmiàn tài ruǎn, búgòu yìng, dà fēijī bùnéng jiàngluò. Suǒyǒude dà fēijīchǎng gēn jūnyòng jīchǎng, pǎodào dōu shì yòng shuǐní zàode.

Chén tàitai tīngjian Xīng-hàn de zhèxiē xīnlǐ xiǎng: zhè hái zi zěnme zhīdào zěnme duō de shìqing? Yúshì jiù shuō, zhèxiē zhīshi dōu shì nǐ shòu xùn de shíhou xuéde ba. Xīng-hàn shuō, shì a. Wǒmen xuéxiào xùnliàn de fāngfǎ zhēn hǎo. Yǒu yíci yǒu yíwèi jiàoguān yào jiǎng jīchǎng shèbèi, tā bǎ yíge jīchǎng de móxíng bǎizai zhuōzishang, jiào xuéyuán zhànzai sìzhōuwéi kàn,

jiào xuéyuán wèn wèntí. Wènle wèntí, jiào dàjiā tāolùn.  
Tāolùn de shíhou, xuéyuán jiànjiānde jiu dōu liǎojiěle.  
Yǒu bùliǎojiěde, jiàoguān zài jiěshi. Jiàoguān de jiěshi  
shì zhùzhòng shíjì de qíngxíng, búzhùzhòng gāoshēn de lǐlùn.  
Zhèyàng, wǒmen xuéyuán dé de yìchu zuì duō.

Tāmen shuōdao zhège dìfang, hūrán tiānqi biànle.  
Láile hěn duō hēi yúncai. Wēndù hěn gāo, chàbuduō yǒu  
huáshibiǎo jiǔshí dù zuǒyòu. Kěshi qìyā hěn dī. Dǎle yíge  
shǎn, jiēzhe dǎle yíge léi, jiu xiàqi yǔ láile.  
Chén Xīng-hàn gǎnjīn gēn tā mǔqīn jiu jìnqu duǒ yǔ qùle.  
Zài lǐtou, tīngshuō nàjià wùdiǎn de fēijī yǐjīng zài  
jīchǎng de shàngkōng pánxuán, yīnwei yúndǐng tài dī, bùnéng  
jiàngluò. Yǒu guòle bānge zhōngtóu, "yǔguòtiānqíng" yǐhòu,  
fēijī cái ānquándé jiàngluò, tāmen jiànzhào tāmen nàwèi  
qīnqi, jiu yíkuàir huí jiā le.

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. Such profound theories (as those) can't be elucidated in one or two statements. If you have time, I can give you an unhurried explanation (slowly explain them for you).
2. Look! All the thunder and lightning, and rain coming down so hard, and we don't have raincoats or rainhats-- why don't we go over to that little house by the unloading station to get out of the rain! (Gànmǎ used for why.)

3. Sometimes in the evening I see lots of searchlights illuminating the sky from the ground--then I can't see the stars any longer.
4. When I came here by air, the aircraft circled over Hong Kong for a long time. As the aircraft was circling, I saw the airfield beacon, runway beacon, observation tower, weather station, etc.
5. Are (those) words such as "cloud crest" and "atmospheric pressure" clear to you? If you still (hái) don't understand them, tomorrow in class ask the (military) instructor to give you an explanation.
6. That observation tower is made of concrete. Is the building alongside it an unloading station or a weather station?
7. How's the weather today--do you know? How many degrees Fahrenheit is the temperature? What's the atmospheric pressure? What's the wind direction? Is there a chance of a storm?
8. Large aircraft should land on hard surface runways. Hard surface runways are constructed of concrete.
9. If you know how to handle it, then we'll ask you to build this airfield. We want thrift and speed, and quality as well. If you can't handle it, then don't give your assent.
10. We invited that musician to our club to sing, but he didn't accept. He said he was a student of profound music theory (yuèlǐ), and didn't place much emphasis on singing.
11. We don't have a military airfield here; there is only a civilian field. But a military aircraft is having trouble and must land here--what should we do?
12. The barometer is broken; is there any other way to find out what the atmospheric pressure is?
13. A munitions dump has just been built here. It's very dangerous for you to stand there--you'd better stay clear.
14. The weather here fluctuates a lot. There is a wide spread between morning and noon temperatures, and the wind direction often changes. Some people say this kind of weather has certain health advantages.

15. Recently the trains here have been having frequent mechanical problems (malfunctions). If a problem develops, repairs must be made; thus, they are often behind schedule. Although I left at four o'clock, I'm not absolutely confident whether we'll be able to get there by six o'clock. If we can't make it by six, please wait a while.
16. In the evening I lay down on the grass and looked at the stars in the sky; gradually I became tired and fell asleep. If it hadn't been for the cold, I certainly wouldn't have wanted to leave.
17. The airfield they just finished construction on was certainly built quickly. The airfield beacon and runway beacon are both very well built. A searchlight has also been installed.
18. I spent a long time explaining it, and after thinking it over for a while, he gradually came to understand it.
19. Grass runways are softer than the great majority of runways. Jets, fighters and other large aircraft can't land on them. There are scarcely any grass runways anymore. Now almost all of them are made of concrete.
20. To put it briefly, that is a profound theory, and if you don't listen intently, you surely won't be able to understand it.

## Lesson 13

I. VOCABULARY

432. zhàoxiàngyuán                   N: photographer  
 432.1 zhàoxiàngqiāng               N: gun camera  
 432.2 zhàoxiàngguǎn               N: photography studio
433. zhèngshì                       SV: formal, official  
                                       A: formally, officially
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
434. jì...yòu...                    Patt: both...and..., not only...  
                                       but...as well
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
435. zhī                              P: (literary equivalent of  
                                       the possessive "de")
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 435.1 ...zhīzhōng               Patt: in the center of...  
 435.2 ...zhīnèi                 Patt: inside  
 435.3 Měiguó zhī Yīn            N: Voice of America  
 435.4 zài...zhīxià             Patt: under...
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
436. jīngcháng                    SV/A: constant, frequent,  
                                       regular/constantly,  
                                       frequently, regularly
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
437. jīngwěixiàn                 N: lines of latitude and  
                                       longitude  
 437.1 jīngxiàn                 N: meridians of longitude  
 437.2 jīngdù                    N: degrees of longitude  
 437.3 dōngjīng                 N: east longitude  
 437.4 wěixiàn                 N: parallels of latitude  
 437.5 wěidù                    N: degrees of latitude  
 437.6 běiwěi                    N: north latitude
438. zhuāncháng                   SV/N: adept in, excel in,  
                                       expert [specialist] in/  
                                       specialty  
 438.1 zhuāncháng xùnlìàn       N: specialized training

L. 13

438. zhuāncháng (continued)  
438.2 jūnzhí zhuāncháng N: military occupational specialty  
438.3 jūnzhí zhuāncháng biānhào N: military occupational specialty number (A.F.S.C., M.O.S.)
439. fēixíng lùxiàn N: flight route
440. hǎiàn N: sea coast, sea shore  
440.1 hǎiànxiàn N: coastline
441. xiángxi SV: detailed, in detail, meticulous  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
442. xìnghào (xùnhào) N: signal  
442.1 dǎ xìnghào (xùnhào) VO: send a signal, give a signal  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
443. kē mù N: course of study, curriculum; (military) training subject
444. guānchá V/N: observe/observation  
a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_
445. liú V: flow
446. míngxiǎn SV: obvious, evident, apparent, clearly visible
447. mùdìdì N: destination
448. biànbíé V: discriminate, distinguish  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
449. píngyuán N: plain (geographic)



450. búzhìyu... Ph: won't reach the point  
of..., won't go so far  
as..., not to the extent  
of...  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
451. shāndì N: mountainous area  
451.1 shāngǔ N: valley
452. shìshì VO/N: have an accident/accident  
a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_
453. shíjì SV/Att/N: realistic, practical/  
actual, real, factual/  
actuality, reality  
453.1 shíjìshang A: actually, in reality, as  
a matter of fact, in fact  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
454. shíqī N: period (of time)  
454.1 shíjiān\* N: time  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
455. shuōbudìng RC: can't say for sure  
whether..., there's no  
telling whether  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
456. dān V: carry (on a pole) on  
one's shoulders,  
shoulder (a load or  
responsibility)  
456.1 dānrèn V: take charge of,  
take on, assume (duties  
or office)  
VO: shoulder responsibility  
a. \_\_\_\_\_  
456.2 dān dànzi VO: carry a load (on a pole)  
on the shoulder

L. 13

457. dīkōng	PW: low altitude
457.1 dīkōng fēixíng	N: low altitude flying
457.2 dīkōng hōngzhà	N: low altitude bombing
457.3 dīkōng sāoshè	N: low altitude strafing
458. tiáojiàn	N: conditions, terms
458.1 wútiáojiàn	Att: unconditional
458.2 yǒutiáojiàn	Att: conditional
459. tiānqi yùbào	N: weather forecast
460. yídài	N: region, area, zone
461. yǒuqù	SV: interesting

a. \_\_\_\_\_

NOTES

- (433) a. The two of them were formally married (had a formal wedding).
- (434) a. His comments were not only interesting, but made sense too.
- (435) a. New York's Empire State Building is the tallest building in the world.
- b. Once this matter comes under his control, there certainly won't be any problem.
- (436) a. We regularly speak Chinese in school.
- (441) a. Your explanation wasn't detailed enough.
- (442) a. I signaled to him with my hand.
- (444) a. We dispatched a reconnaissance aircraft to go and observe enemy positions.
- b. Based on my observations, the Chinese Communists are certain to invade Taiwan.
- (446) a. The enemy positions are not clearly visible from high altitudes (are barely visible...).
- (448) a. I can't distinguish which are the enemy aircraft.

- (450) a. The weather's so nice, I doubt that it will rain.  
(Or: The weather's so nice, it probably won't rain.)
- (452) a. Why is it there have been such frequent aircraft accidents this month?  
b. How many people died in this aircraft accident?
- (453) a. While he looks very wealthy, he, in fact, hasn't any money.
- (454) a. This is class time--you can't talk whenever you feel like it.
- (455) a. Would you please take charge of this job?
- (461) a. The story he told was very interesting.

## II. STORY

### Zhuāncháng Xùnliàn

Píngcháng zài kōngjūn shòuwán jībēn jiàoliàn yǐhòu, měiyíge xuéyuán dōu dēi jīngguo yíge shíqī de zhuāncháng xùnliàn, ránhòu cái néng pàichuqu, tì guójiā fúwù. Wǒmen cóngqián shuōguo, Chén Xīng-hàn jiārù kōngjūn de mùdì jiùshì xiǎng zài fēijīshang fúwù, dānrèn wúxiàndiàn tōngxùn de gōngzuò. Suǒyǐ tā shòu zhuāncháng xùnliàn de shíhou, xuǎnle sānge kēmù. Dìyíge kēmù dāngrán shì wúxiàndiàn tōngxùn. Lìngwài liǎngge kēmù, yíge shì língháng, yíge shì kōngzhōng zhàoxiàng. Zài xùnliàn de shíqī, Chén Xīng-hàn rènwéi zài fēijīshang fúwù, qìxiàng guānchá yě fēicháng zhòngyào, suǒyǐ tā chúle zhèngshì xuǎn nàsānge kēmù yǐwài, bìngqiě yě shùnbiàn xuéle yìxiē guānyú qìxiàng de chángshì. Shuōbuding jiānglái yě yòngdezháo.

Jírán wúxiàndiàn tōngxùn de gōngzuò shì Chén Xīng-hàn de běnháng, suǒyǐ tā duìyu zhège xùnliàn yě tèbié zhùyì, bùguǎn shì zài kōngzhōng liǎnxī tōnghuà yě hǎo, zài dìmiàn liǎnxī tōnghuà yě hǎo, jīdì de xùnliàn rényuán dōu rènwéi Chén Xīng-hàn de gōngzuò zuì mǎnyì. Bīfang shuō, yǒu yíci tā gēnzhe jiàoguān chángtú fēixíng. Zài fēijīshang, fēijī gēn jīdì de tàtái liánluo, bùguǎn shì bàogào fēixíng wèizhi yě hǎo, qǐngqiú tiānqì yùbào yě hǎo, jiàoguān wánquán ràng Chén Xīng-hàn dānrèn tōnghuà de gōngzuò. Jùshuō, jiéguǒ dōu fēicháng mǎnyì.

Chén Xīng-hàn chúle běnháng de xùnliàn yǐwài, tā juéde lǐngháng de gōngzuò yě hěn yǒuqù. Jù tā zìjǐ shuō, tā duìyu kàn dìtú, xiànglái jiu yǒuxìngqu. Tā xuǎnle lǐngháng de kēmù yǐhòu, yòu jīngcháng yánjiu hángkōng dìtú, suǒyǐ gèng juéde, zuò yíge lǐnghángyuán, búshi yíjiàn róngyì de shìqing. Píngcháng, zài zìjǐ de guójiā fēixíng de shíhou, yíge lǐnghángyuán, búdàn xūyào zhīdao mùdìdì zài jīngwěixiànshang de wèizhi, bìngqiě yě xūyào zhīdao nǎyídài de dìxíng, xiàng shān yǒu duōme gāo, hé wàng shénme fāngxiàng liú. Hái yǒu, nǎyídài shì píngyuán, nǎyídài shì shāndì, nǎyíge dìqū yǒu sēnlín, nǎxiē dìfang yǒu dà hú. Zhīdao zhèxiē qíngxíng yǐhòu, yíge xiángxì de fēixíng lùxiàn jiu róngyì jīhuale. Yóuqíshi dīkōng fēixíng de shíhou, rúguǒ zhīdao zhèxiē qíngxíng, jiùshi yùjian qìhou biànhuà, qiyā bùwěn, shénmede, yěxǔ jiu búzhìyu shìshì le.

Zài zìjǐ guójiā de shàngkōng fēixíng, dāngrán bǐjiào fāngbian, wúlùn shì chángtú fēixíng huòshì duǎn jùlí fēixíng, rúguǒ lǐnghángyuán yǒu shénme wèntí, kěyǐ suǐshí qǐngqiú bāngzhu. Kěshì zài zhànshí, wǒmende fēijī xūyào hōngzhà díren de zhèndì, huòshì zài píngshí, wǒmen xūyào fēidào tāmende shàngkōng zhēnchá, zhàoxiàng; zài zhèzhōng qǐngxíng zhīxià, fēijī děi zài díren de gāokōng fēixíng. Zhè shíhou lǐnghángyuán biānbié fāngxiàng de nénglì, biānbié mùbiāo de nénglì, jiù fēicháng yào jīnle. Yuányīn shì: rúguǒ fēijī chūle shénme cuòr, tā jì bùnéng dǎ xīnhào qǐngqiú díren bāngmáng, yòu bùnéng suǐbiàn ràng fēijī luàn fēi, nà shízài wēixiǎnjíle. Zhège dào lǐ hěn míngxiǎn, wǒmen zài zhèr jiù búbì duō shuōle. Yíge lǐnghángyuán de dīlǐ zhīshi yuè duō, duì gè dìqū de dìxíng, wèizhi yuè qīngchu, tā suǒjuédingde hángkōng lùxiàn yuè ānquán, dāngrán fēijī chūshì de jīhuì yě jiù yuè shǎole.

Chén Xīng-hàn zhuāncháng xùnliàn de kēmù dāngzhōng, dìsānge shì kōngzhōng zhàoxiàng. Tā xuǎn zhèyíkē de mùdì, búguò shì xiǎng xué yìdiǎnr zhàoxiàng de jìshù. Shíjìshang, tā méidǎsuan zuò zhàoxiàngyuán de gōngzuò. Kěshì, tā zài kōngzhōng zhàole jǐcì xiàng yǐhòu, fāxiàn yuǎn jùlí zhàoxiàng, búdàn shì yíjiàn yǒuqù de gōngzuò, érqiě, zài jūnshìshang yě kěyǐ dédào hěn zhōngyào de qíngbào.

Duìyu shàngbiānr wǒmen suǒshuōde zhèsānzhōng zhuāncháng xùnliàn, Chén Xīng-hàn dōu yǒu xìngqū. Bìngqiě,

tā zuò zhèxiē gōngzuò de tiáojiàn hěn hǎo. Dìyī, tāde shēnti fēicháng jiēshi, búpà chángtú fēixíng. Dièr, tā xiànglái xīhuan kōngzhōng shēnghuó. Zuò fēijī, shénme dìfang dōu kěyǐ qù. Suǒyǐ, tā xīwang dǐnghǎo zǎo yìdiǎnr xùnliánwánle jiēdao gōngzuò de mínglíng, kāishǐ zài kōngjūn fúwù.

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. We saw very much forest while flying at low altitude. Part of the forest was on fire.
2. That scientist is extremely responsible. He lectures both clearly and in detail. I don't think there is anyone who did not understand.
3. The weather forecast last night said the weather in the area along the coast would be good today, but the weather wouldn't be too good in the hill country. Unfortunately, we are going out on a mission today and have to go to the hilly lands.
4. Looking at the plains from high altitude is really extremely interesting. You can see bridges and rivers which are very pretty and even (yǐjǐ - and even) the houses which are all in order. It is also interesting to stand on the plains and look at the sky.
5. He is both brave and affable. Moreover, he is smart. He really is a very good person. I think he must have (definitely has) received military training.
6. Actually the difference between those few Chinese characters is very obvious. Can you distinguish them?
7. Sending signals is also a type of special ability. You can't send signals if you haven't received special training on sending signals. I think that the students in a military school often have opportunities for studying how to send signals.

8. He has studied a lot about music and he dances especially well. I used to be with him regularly, but I haven't seen him recently. I think it isn't likely for him to have changed any.
9. All the people in mainland China have joined people's communes under the pressure of the Chinese Communists. The regulations in the communes are both numerous and strict. The Chinese say the people all approve, but actually they all oppose the communes.
10. The last time I went on a long-distance flight, I couldn't find my position, so I looked at the coordinates on the map but I couldn't say for sure if my flight route was wrong.
11. From looking at the map, the flight routes are red, the longitude and latitude coordinates (zuòbiāo) all are blue, the coast line is black and the plains are green.
12. That aircraft had an accident while flying at low altitude. Many common people were injured.
13. Do you know New York's location? Please tell me the longitude and latitude of New York. If you don't know, please look at this map.
14. The last time I made a long-distance flight, I cruised (xúnháng - to cruise ) in the air over 180 degrees east longitude - 23 degrees north latitude, circling for a long time.
15. That river flows from the hilly land to the low area through a plain and then afterwards it flows into the sea.
16. He has never believed the weather forecasts on the radio, but he still listens to them regularly.
17. We have decided to take a trip. Our destination is New York. We are planning to go south along the sea coast. I can't say for sure how many people are going. I request all the people who want to go to gather at the train depot at 8 o'clock in the morning.
18. He is a cameraman (photographer). Taking pictures is his line and is also his special talent. He says taking pictures is extremely interesting. Every time we perform a play or hold a celebration meeting we ask him to come and take pictures.

L. 13

19. According to his observations, no one can say for certain if there will be many changes in the world in the future.
20. He has already formally requested to join the Air Force. He feels that the Air Force is best, and says that the best opportunity to serve the country is to join the Air Force.





L. 14

470. huàn yíjù huà shuō      Ph: in other words, to put  
it another way

471. kànchéng      V: look upon as, regard as,  
consider

a. \_\_\_\_\_

472. kào      V/CV: lean on, depend on;  
lean to(ward),  
veer to(ward)/near,  
towards, close to

a. \_\_\_\_\_

472.1 kàodezhù      RC: dependable, reliable,  
trustworthy

b. \_\_\_\_\_

472.2 kěkào      SV: reliable, trustworthy

c. \_\_\_\_\_

473. lián...dài...      A: including both...and...

a. \_\_\_\_\_

473.1 yìlián      A: in succession, in a row

b. \_\_\_\_\_

474. lúnliú      V: rotate, take turns, in  
rotation

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

475. mǎ      N: numerical or code symbols

475.1 mímǎ      N: secret code

475.2 mìdiànmǎ      N: secret telegraphic code

475.3 fānchéng mìdiànmǎ      VO: encode

a. \_\_\_\_\_

475.4 míngmǎ      N: clear code, Standard  
Telegraphic Code (STC)

476. òurán                      Att/A: accidental, chance,  
casual, occasional/  
accidentally, by chance,  
occasionally, once in a  
while  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
477. pèifu                      V: respect, admire  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
478. píngjūn                    MA/SV/V/N: on the average, equally/  
average, equal/average  
up or out/average  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 478.1 píngděng                SV/N: equal (of people)/equality
479. shíxí                      V/N: train on the job/  
on-the-job training (OJT)  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
480. dǎo(yǔ)                    N: island  
480.1 hǎidǎo                    N: island (in the sea)  
480.2 bànǎo                    N: peninsula (lit. half-  
island)
481. tíxǐng                    V: remind  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
482. diànwén                    N: text (of a telegram)  
482.1 míngwén                    N: plaintext (message)  
482.2 fānchéng míngwén        VO: decode
483. tíngzhǐ                    V: stop (doing something),  
halt  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 483.1 bùtíngde                A: without stopping,  
continuously, unceasingly  
b. \_\_\_\_\_

L. 14

484. cáiliào N: data, source material  
(for a report), material  
(for building, sewing,  
etc.)
- 484.1 zīliào N: data, material(s)
485. zài hǎo yě méiyǒule Ph: couldn't be better
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
486. zǎowǎn A: sooner or later,  
eventually
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
487. cóng...shang (lái) kàn Ph: looking at it from the  
standpoint of...,  
judging from the  
standpoint of...
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
488. duìfāng N: the other (opposing)  
party, opponent
- 488.1 miàn duì miàn IE: face to face
- 488.2 duìshǒu N: rival, competitor;  
one's match, one's equal  
(at something)
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
489. wúxiàndiànbào N/Att: radiogram/radiotelegraph
- 489.1 wúxiàndiànhuà N: radio-telephone (RT)
490. yáoyán N: rumor
- 490.1 chuánbō yáoyán VO: spread a rumor
- 490.2 zào yáoyán VO: start a rumor
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 490.3 zàoyáoshēngshì IE: cause trouble by starting  
rumors
491. yúlè N: entertainment, amusement,  
recreation, fun, pleasure
492. yuánliàng V/N: forgive, pardon/  
forgiveness, pardon
- a. \_\_\_\_\_

NOTES

- (462) a. I can prove that he is responsible for this matter. (Or: I can prove that he did this.)  
b. You say he's Chinese--do you have any proof?
- (463) a. A pilot really has to be on his toes.
- (464) a. He eats Chinese food every other day.
- (467) a. He analyzed the enemy's situation.  
b. I don't have any opinions on his analysis.  
c. I've distributed these things to them.
- (471) a. Don't regard military training as something meaningless.
- (472) a. A youth of 20 can no longer live off his parents (depend on his parents for a living).  
b. Is that friend of yours reliable?  
c. This pilot is very trustworthy--you can put your mind at ease (relax) when he's at the controls.
- (473) a. Including both boys and girls, we have altogether 300 and some students here.  
b. He went three times in a row.
- (474) a. We have already had two turns (each).  
b. The two of us alternately go out on missions (take turns going out on missions).
- (475) a. Please encode this intelligence.
- (476) a. I don't go to the movies often--I've seen an occasional movie or two.
- (477) a. He respects old Mr. Li very much.
- (478) a. Every day I work an average of eight hours.
- (479) a. He interned in the hospital for a year.
- (481) a. If I should forget, please remind me.

L. 14

- (483) a. Do you think the United States should stop conducting atomic tests?  
b. He spoke (lectured) continuously for three hours.
- (485) a. If you could come tomorrow that would be perfect.
- (486) a. Sooner or later a person has to die.
- (487) a. Looking at it from the standpoint of economics, this method (approach) is impracticable.
- (488) a. The Chinese Communists are not a match for the U.S.A.
- (490) a. This is certainly a rumor started by the enemy.
- (492) a. I didn't get this matter (adequately) taken care of for you--please forgive me.

## II. STORY

### Fúwù Kōngjūn

Zhuāncháng xùnliàn wánle yǐhòu, zhèxiē xuéyuán xiūxile yíge hěn duǎn de shíqī jiu diàoqu gōngzuò qùle. Àn dào lǐ Chén Xīng-hàn yīngdāng zài fēijīshàng fúwù, kěshi bùzhīdào wèishénme sīlǐngbù hūrán tōngzhī tā liúzai dìmiàn gōngzuò. Xīng-hàn jiēdao zhège mìnglǐng de shíhou, xīnlǐ yǒu diǎnr búdà tòngkuai. Tā xiǎng zài qīngqiú sīlǐngbù pài tā dào yíge jīdì qù, zài fēijīshàng gōngzuò. Tā wèi zhèjiàn shìqing kǎolǔle hěn jiǔ yǐhòu, zuìhòu tā juéde háishi dīnghǎo fúcóng mìnglǐng. Suǒyǐ tā jiu gēnzhe jǐge xuéyuán dào yíge lí Dàlù shíjī huáilǐ de hǎidǎoshàng qù shíxí qùle. Jiéguǒ, tāde rènwu yě jiu cóng tōngxùn gǎichéng shōutīng de gōngzuò le.

Zài kāishǐ shíxí de shíhou, suīrán dàjiā dōu jīngguo hěn hǎo de xùnliàn, kěshi zuòqǐ shìqing lái, yě yǒu bùshǎo

de kùnnan. Zhège yuányīn hěn míngxiǎn: cóngqián zuò shōutīng liànxí de shíhou, yìfāshēng shénme kùnnan jiu kěyǐ qīng jiàoguān bāngmáng. Xiànzài zhèngshì shíxí, wúlùn shénme shìqing dōu dēi kào zìjǐ de běnshi; suǒyǐ yào xiǎng jiějué shōutīngshang de kùnnan, yǒu shíhou, dāngrán fèi bùshǎo de gōngfu. Bīfang shuō, rúguo yùjian yíge kǒuyīn hěn zhòng de rén tōnghuà, huòshi duìfāng kōngjūn rényuán tōnghuà de shíhou chángcháng yòng xiē qíqíguàiguài de míngcí, gāng tīng de shíhou yě bútài róngyi. Zài shuō, rúguo ōurán yùjian duìfāng kōngzhōng yǎnxí, huòshi dǎ bǎ liànxí, zhàndòu liànxí de shíhou, nà jiu gèng kùnnanle. Yìyǒu zhèyàng de shìqing fāshēng, Chén Xīng-hàn zhège dānwèi de rényuán chángcháng lián duìzhǎng dài duìyuán, yìlián jǐtiān bùtíngde gōngzuò, búshi shōutīng tōnghuà jiùshi zhěnglǐ shōutīng de cáiliào. Gēnju tāmen zhèyídài de jīngyan, yǒu shíhou dàjiā měitiān píngjūn zuò shíxiǎoshí yǐshàng de gōngzuò. Shuōqilai, tāmen duì gōngzuò de xìngqu zhēn shì gāojíle. Tāmen zuò shì de jīngshen yě shízài shì ràng rén pèifu.

Zuò shōutīng de gōngzuò, píngcháng chūle shōutīng fēiji tōnghuà yǐwài, chángcháng tīngdao míngmǎ, huòshi mímǎ de wúxiàndiànbào. Rúguo yùjian zhèyàng de shìqing fāshēng, diànwén bùnéng lìkè liǎojiě, huòshi xūyào bǎ mímǎ fāchéng míngwén, zhèyíbùfe de fēnxi gēn fānyì de gōngzuò. xūyào jiāogěi shòuguò tèbié xùnliàn de rényuán qù bàn.

Chén Xīng-hàn zhèxiē rén yīnwei xùnliǎn gēn jīngyan dōu búgòu, hái bùnéng dānrèn zhèzhǒng gōngzuò.

Zài zhège hǎidǎoshang, chūle shíxí de rényuán yīwài, háiyǒu yíge duìzhǎng, tā fùzé fēnpèi gōngzuò, guǎnlǐ dàjiā de shēnghuó. Shìqing bùguǎn dà xiǎo, zhèxiē xuéyuán dōu lúnliúzhè zuò. Měi jié jītiān dàjiā dōu yǒu xiūxi de jīhui. Yíge xuéyuán gōngzuò yíge shíqī yǐhòu, hái kěyǐ xiū jītiān jià, chèn jīhui huídào Táiwān qù wánwánr. Yīnwei zài zhège hǎidǎoshang shízài méiyǒu hǎo de yúlè.

Píngcháng zuò shì de shíhou, měitiān wǎnshang, zài duìfāng de kōngjūn tíngzhǐ huódong yǐhòu, duìzhǎng jiù suíshí tíxǐng dàjiā, xīwang tāmen tèbié jījǐng; zài líkāi gōngzuò dìdiǎn yǐhòu bùnéng suíbiàn tán jūnshì fāngmiàn de shìqing yě búyào suíbiàn xìn wàibian de yáoyán, yīnwei zhè dōu shì bùkěyǐ yuánliàng de shìqing. Cóng jūnshìshang kàn, duìzhǎng de jǐnggào, fēicháng yǒulǐ. Guānyú zhèyìdiǎn wǒ xiǎng zài jūnduì fúwù de rén zǎowǎn dōu huì fāxiàn hěn duō rén yǒu xīhuan duō shuō huà de quēdiǎn.

Zènme yìshuō, yěxǔ yǒu rén bǎ jūnshì gōngzuò kànchéng yíjiàn bùkěyǐ zuò de shìqing. Huàn yíjù huà shuō, yěxǔ yǒu rén juéde jūnshì shēnghuó tài búziyóule. Qíshí, cóng gè-fāngmiàn zhèngmíng, shíjì de qíngxíng búshì zhège yàngzi. Píngcháng, rènwu zuòwán yǐhòu, yíge rén yuànyì zuò shénme kěyǐ zuò shénme. Rúguo nǐ yǒu niàn shū de jìhua yě yǒu niàn shū de juéxīn, nǐ kěyǐ liyòng bùgōngzuò de shíjiān



jìxù yánjiū. Nàme, jiānglái líkai kōngjūn yǐhòu zhǎo yíge héli de gōngzuò, nà búshi zài hǎo yě méiyǒule ma?

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. The weather on this island isn't too good. There are often storms, sometimes without stopping for several days in succession.
2. He decodes secret codes. He can decode several hundred words each hour on the average. He decodes very rapidly.
3. He is very rich in common sense and is very alert in his work. Moreover he is very determined. I respect him very much (I am unusually respectful toward him).
4. We three take turns on duty (days). Each person has one turn every three days. All of us have to observe this rule. Tomorrow it's my turn (wǒde "bēr" [bānr]). If I forget, please remind me (once).
5. There is too little (few) material(s). You three carefully divide it up and distribute it.
6. Please analyze this (once) to see if it is a fact or a rumor.
7. That is a coded (yòng diànmǎ de) radiogram. I don't understand secret code. Would you like to (be willing to) decode it?
8. It can be proved from all aspects that he is a good man. He has no shortcomings. Yesterday he accidentally made a little mistake. Everyone says we should forgive him.
9. In the last few days, the opponent has attacked unusually ferociously, (and) the situation is fairly tense. Our soldiers have voluntarily ceased all recreation. The spirit of the soldiers is really terrific!

L. 14

10. That peninsula is 30 Chinese miles long and 3 Chinese miles wide. There is a small island 5 Chinese miles off that side of the peninsula. I have heard there are very many fortifications and anti-aircraft guns on the island.
11. He began actual practice in a factory just after he graduated. On the average, he works eight hours a day for five days in succession per week. He is very enthusiastic about his work (works very enthusiastically).
12. Judging from the standpoint of history, China has many inventions. I think this proves that China's civilization is very advanced. If you make a careful study of Chinese history you will understand this (a little better).
13. A majority of the people who work on that island depend on fishing for a living. I've heard that everyone, including both the men and women, regards fishing as a most important job.
14. Today we have a vacation; everyone, including adults and children, is going to that island to relax. They are taking things to eat, maps, compasses, telescopes, etc.
15. This telegraphic message is too long. It will take over an hour to encode it.
16. He has already decoded that secret telegram. The contents of the telegraphic message said: You are to go to that island for actual practice. Want you to report (hope you will report) in on the first of next month at which time you will start work.
17. He is right now (undergoing) actual practice (actually practicing). He is determined to do the actual practice well. I respect him very much. I think that sooner or later he will succeed.
18. There are a lot of military secrets in this area. Without proof we cannot let you enter. If you do have proof, then it couldn't be better.

19. The troops on that island are a long way from here. On the average they send us one radiogram every three hours, reporting their conditions (conditions there). We are in contact with them at all times and regularly send them telegrams.
20. Let's go to the officers' club together. It's said that there have been numerous entertainment programs lately, including plays, music, etc.



## Lesson 15

I. VOCABULARY

493. zhàndòuhōngzhàjī                    N: fighter-bomber
494. jīmì                                    SV: secret, confidential,  
classified
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
495. jípǔchē                                N: jeep  
495.1 tǎnkè(chē)                        N: tank (military)
496. jiào mén                                VO: knock at the door
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
497. jiéjī                                    V: intercept
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- [497.1 jiéjījī]                        N: interceptor (acft)
498. qiánxiàn                                N: the front line(s)  
498.1 qiánfāng                            N: the front  
498.2 hòufāng                            N: the rear
499. Jīnmén(dǎo)                        PW: Quemoy (Island)  
499.1 Xiàmén(shì)                        PW: Amoy (Municipality)  
499.2 Mǎzǔ(dǎo)                        PW: Matsu (Island)
500. chuánlǐngbīng                        N: (military) messenger,  
courier
501. fān                                      V: tip over, capsize,  
overturn; translate
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 50X. fānchuán                                N: sailing vessel, sailboat  
50X.1 jīfānchuán                        N: motorized junk
502. fán                                      SV: annoyed
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
503. fángjiān                                N: room (same as wūzi)

L. 15

504. hàipà V/SV: afraid (of), fear/  
apprehensive, timid  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
505. xīngfèn V/SV/N: excite/excited/excitement  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
506. gǎnkuài \* A: hurriedly, at once,  
promptly  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
507. gānggǔ SV: steel reinforced  
507.1 gānggǔ shuǐní N: reinforced concrete
508. guójūn N: Nationalist forces<sup>1</sup>  
Att: Nationalist (military)  
508.1 fěijūn N: bandit troops, bandit<sup>1</sup>  
forces  
508.2 gòngfěi \* N: Communist "bandits"<sup>1</sup>
509. gōngjī V/N: attack/attack  
a. \_\_\_\_\_  
b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 509.1 xíjī V/N: raid/surprise attack,  
raid  
509.2 yèxí N: night raid
510. lǐyóu N: reason
511. liángshi N: foodstuffs, provisions  
511.1 jūnliáng N: military food supplies
512. luò V: fall, drop  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 512.1 luòwǔ V/SV: fall behind, straggle/be  
backward, underdeveloped

---

<sup>1</sup> This term is used only by the Chinese on Taiwan

513. měngliè SV: fierce, furious, violent  
(attack, argument, disagreement), sharp, severe (measure, price-cut, reduction)
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
514. bàozhà V: explode, blow up
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
515. pàozhàn N: artillery war (battle)
516. dìxià gōngzuò rényuán N: member(s) of the underground
517. zǔ N: section (of an organization), group (in a code message)
- 517.1 zǔzhǎng N: section chief
518. tuǐ N: leg
- 518.1 dàtuǐ N: thigh
- 518.2 gēbei N: arm
519. zìcóng...yǐlái Patt: ever since...
520. yán(zhe) V/N: following along/edge
- 520.1 yán hǎi yídài Ph: coastal area; along the coast
- 520.2 yán hé Ph: along the river
521. yīguān N: medical officer
- 521.1 yīxuéyuàn N: medical school
- 521.2 yīsheng N: doctor
- 521.3 yīshī N: doctor
522. yùn \* V: transport, ship (with -dǎole or -láile) delivered
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 522.1 yùnshū V/N: transport/supply, transportation
- 522.2 yùnshūjī N: transport or cargo aircraft
- 522.3 yùnshūxiàn N: supply line(s)

NOTES

- (494) a. Please don't discuss classified matters freely.
- (496) a. I knocked on the door for a long time, but no one appeared.
- (497) a. The squadron commander sent 20 fighters to intercept the enemy bombers.
- (501) a. That jeep overturned.
- (502) a. I feel very uneasy (bored, impatient, annoyed, etc.).
- (504) a. By all means, don't be frightened.
- (505) a. I was very excited when I received your letter.
- (506) a. If you're planning to take the three o'clock train, you should get to the station right away.
- (509) a. The enemy often comes to attack at night.  
b. The enemy took heavy casualties in this attack.
- (512) a. The leaves have all fallen, some onto the ground and some into the little river.
- (513) a. For the past two days the enemy has been attacking furiously.
- (514) a. I hear the enemy munitions dump blew up (was blown up).
- (522) a. Those weapons have already been delivered.

II. STORY

Jīnmén Zuòzhàn

Yǒu yìtiān zǎoshang, tiān gāng liàng, Xīng-hàn hái zài shuǐjiào ne, hūrán tīngjian fángjiān wàitou, shēngyīn hěn luàn. Xīng-hàn juéde hěn qíguài, jiu lìkè qīlai, chūqu yí-kàn, kànjian hěn duō rén pǎolái, pǎoqù, liǎnshang dōu hěn



jīnzhāng. Xīng-hàn kànjian yíge chúanlǐngbīng pǎoguolai, jiu wèn tā, shénme shìqing zènme luàn. Chuánlǐngbīng kànjian Xīng-hàn shì shàowèi, jiu jǐngle yíge lǐ, shuō: "Bàogào shàowèi, gāngcái Sīlǐngbù jiēdào Jīnmén fāngmiànde chángtú diànhuà, shuō gòngfěi yǐjīng kāishǐ gōngjī Jīnméndǎo le." Tā shuōwánle, méiděng Xīng-hàn shuō shénme, jiu lìkè yòu jǐngle yíge lǐ, pǎole. Xīng-hàn tīngle zhège xiāoxi, fēicháng xìngfèn. Tā zìcóng jiārù kōngjūn yǐlái, yìzhíde xīwàng néng yǒu jīhuì cānjiā zhànzhèng. Xiànzài tāde jīhuì láile.

Chīwánle zǎofàn, Xīng-hàn jiu qù jiàn qíngbào zǔ de zǔzhǎng, qǐngqiú zǔzhǎng bǎ tā diàodao qiánxiàn qù fúwù. Zǔzhǎng wèn tā yǒu shénme lǐyóu. Xīng-hàn shuōle hěn duō lǐyóu. Zǔzhǎng jǐnggào tā shuō, yíge jūnrén zuì yào jīnde shìqing shì fúcóng shàngtoude mìnglíng, hǎohāorde zuò zìjǐde gōngzuò, yàoshi dàjiā dōu yào dào qiánxiàn qù, zhèlǐde gōngzuò shéi zuò ne? Xiàng zhèyàngrde qǐngqiú shì bùxǔkěde. Xīng-hàn chūlái yǐhòu, xīnlǐ hěn fán.

Nàtiān, jīdìde gōngzuò bǐ píngcháng jīnzhāng. Xiàle bān, Xīng-hàn juéde hěn píjuàn, suǒyǐ jiu tǎngxiàle. Yīhuǐr jiu shuǐzháole. Tā xǐngle de shíhou, tīngjian fángjiān wàitou yǒu rén jiào mén. Kāi mén yíkan, kànjian yíge chuánlǐngbīng, shǒulǐ nǎzhe yíge dà xīnfēng, xīnfēng shàngtou yǒu "Jīmì" liǎngge zǐ. Xīng-hàn dǎkāi xīnfēng yíkan, lǐtou shì yíge jīnjí mìnglíng, diào Xīng-hàn dào

Jīnmén qiánxiàn qù fúwù. Bīngqiě yào Xīng-hàn zài yèlǐ shìèrdiǎn zhōng yīqián dào Jīnmén sīlǐngbù qù bàodào. Xīng-hàn yíkàn biǎo, yǐjīng kuài bādiǎn le, lí bàodào de shíhou hái yǒu sīge duō zhōngtóu, suǒyǐ jiu lìkè gěi jīchǎng dǎle yíge diǎnhuà, wènwen yǒu méiyǒu fēiji jīntiān yèlǐ jiǔdiǎn zhōng qǐfēi, yùn jūnliáng dào qiánxiàn qù. Xīng-hàn guàshang diǎnhuà jiu gǎnkuài shōushi xínglǐ, dào jīchǎng qùle.

Xīng-hàn zuòde nàjià yùnshūjī zài Jīnmén jiàngluò de shíhou, guójūn gēn fēijūnde pàobīng zhèngzài jìnxíng měngliède pàozhàn. Xīng-hàn tīngjian zènme dà de shēngyin, xīnlǐ yǒu yìdiǎnr hàipà. Zài sīlǐngbù bàodào yǐhòu, Xīng-hàn yùjiànle hěn duō kōngjūn xuéxiào de tóngxué. Tāmen jiu tánqi qiánxiàn de zhànshì láile. Yǒu yíge tóngxué shuō, jīntiān shàngwǔ yǒu liùjià díren de zhàndòu hōngzhàjī lái zhà Jīnmén, wǒmende fēiji shàngqù jiéjī, gēn díjī fāshēng kōngzhàn, jiéguǒ dǎxialai liǎngjià díjī. Yǒu yíge tóngxué shuō, gēnju wǒmen zài Dàlù de dìxià gōngzuò rényuán de bàogào, gòngfěi zài yánhǎi yídài jízhōngle hěn duō jīfānchuán suíshí dōu yǒu gōngjī Jīnmén de kěnéng. Língwài yǒu yíge tóngxué shuō, xiànzài qiánfāngde yáoyán hěn duō, yǒu hěn duō xiāoxi dōu bùyídìng kěkào. Tāmen wèn Xīng-hàn hòufāng yǒu shénme tèbiéde xiāoxi méiyǒu. Tāmen shuōzhe shuōzhe, tiān jiu liàngle. Yǒu yíge tóngxué gēn Xīng-hàn shuō, nǐ gāng lái, dàgài hái méiyǒu kànjianguo dǎoshangde qíngxíng ba. Wǒ dài nǐ qù kànkàn.

Tāmen chūle sīlǐngbù, kāile yíliàng jípǔchē dào gèchù qù kànlekan. Xīng-hàn kànjian hěn duō gāngǔ shuǐníde gōngshì, hěn duō tǎnkèchē. Nàxiē bīngde pèibei dōu hěn búcuò. Nàge shíhòu liǎngfāngmiànde pàozhàn gèng měnglièle. Xīng-hàn zhèng wèn nàge tóngzué, wǒmen zài zhèr ānquán bùānquán, yào búyào zhǎo yíge dìfang duǒ yìduǒ. Nàge tóngxué hái méihuídá ne, hūrán yíge pàodàn luòzai lí tāmen bùyuǎnde yíge dìfang, bàozhàle. Jípǔchē fānle. Yíhòude shìqing, Xīng-hàn jiu bùzhīdaole. Tā xingle de shíhou, tǎngzai yìjiān wūzilǐ, zuǒtuī tēngde lǐhai. Yīguān shuō, tā shòu de shāng hěn bùqīng, děi lìkè yòng zhíshēngjī bǎ tā sòngdao hòufāngde kōngjūn yīyuàn qù.

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. I have received three long-distance calls from my friend since he arrived at the front line. We had very pleasant talks every time he called.
2. He was then a messenger at the front line headquarters. He followed the commander running here and there. He had no leisure time for himself at all.
3. The Nationalist headquarters was very close to the enemy's position, therefore it became the target of attack by enemy artillery troops.
4. The commander was very experienced in warfare. The fiercer the war became, the braver he became.
5. The intelligence unit in headquarters was well organized. The underground personnel they sent were all very responsible.

6. Some of the intelligence reports these intelligence personnel got were very secret; some were not too important. No matter whether they were important or not, intelligence personnel all want to analyze them very carefully.
7. The headquarters was located on an island near the enemy's front line. War (battle) could break out any time.
8. He saw two artillery battles when he had just transferred there. He was a little scared at that time, but he became used to it later on.
9. According to him, the enemy artillery units' training is unusually good, (and) their aiming is fairly accurate.
10. But the Nationalist artillery was much better trained and better equipped than they were. Therefore, every time there was an artillery battle, the bandit army suffered more losses than the Nationalists.
11. Perhaps it is for this reason that artillery battles between the two sides have stopped since spring.
12. In the last artillery battle, one artillery shell fell in the vicinity of the headquarters, but did not explode.
13. Although it did not explode, it made (hit) a big hole in the ground. The dirt on the ground, broken rocks (sui-shí; sui, see Lesson 18) and so forth flew up. A good many people nearby were wounded.
14. People who were injured, both military men and common people, were sent together to the front line hospital. If they were seriously injured, they were immediately sent to the hospital in the rear.
15. The front line hospital is a first-aid hospital. Generally speaking, all have no equipment at all. Doctors and nurses are both very few (rare).
16. If some one is injured during the fighting, he is immediately carried back. If his wounds are serious, he is then sent to the rear by helicopter.
17. The defense works on the front line are mostly built of concrete and cement. Usually machine gun bullets are absolutely unable to (strike and) penetrate (it,them).

18. It is said that there are a large number of military men on the island. Their provisions are shipped in by motor junk. Usually when these motor junks come, the cover of fighter planes is always used.
19. Of course, air combat can easily occur if the Nationalist airplanes are intercepted by the enemy planes. But according to what I know, the enemy planes very seldom attack the Nationalist provision ships.
20. There is very little news in the newspapers recently about air combat or artillery battles. It has been very quiet along the sea coast, but this cannot prove that the war has ended (does not prove that the war has ended).



## Lesson 16

I. VOCABULARY

523. zhàn V: constitute, comprise, occupy
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 523.1 zhàn...de Xfēnzhī Y  
 Patt: comprises Y/X of...
- 523.2 zhànling V: occupy, take, seize; take possession of
- 523.3 zhàn dàduōshù Ph: constitute the vast majority
- 523.4 zhànyǒu V/N: possess, hold, occupy; be in possession of/possession
- 523.5 qīnzhàn V: misappropriate, occupy illegally
524. zhāohu V: call, hail, greet; look after, take care of
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
525. zhèngcháng SV: normal
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 525.1 búzhèngcháng SV: abnormal
526. jīguān N/Att: government office or organization, organ/mechanized
527. zhǐ A: only
- 527.1 zhǐhǎo MA: all one can do (under the circumstances) is..., have no choice but to...
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 527.2 zhǐnéng MA: all one can do (under the circumstances) is..., have no choice but to...
- b. \_\_\_\_\_





535. xiàngpíngāo                      N: adhesive tape  
       535.1 jiāobù                     N: adhesive tape
536. xiāohuà                         V/N: digest/digestion  
       a. \_\_\_\_\_  
       b. \_\_\_\_\_
537. xiànxiang                      N: phenomenon; symptom (of  
   an illness)
538. xuě/xuè/xiě                    N: blood  
       538.1 xuèguǎn                 N: blood vessel  
       538.2 liú xuè                 VO: bleed  
       a. \_\_\_\_\_
539. kāi dāo                         VO: operate, have an operation  
       a. \_\_\_\_\_
540. gǎnji                            V/N: grateful or thankful  
   (toward)/gratitude,  
   thanks  
       a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 540.1 gǎnxiè                        V/N: grateful or thankful  
   (toward)/gratitude,  
   thanks
541. gútou                            N: bone
542. guānxīn                        SV/V: be concerned about (for,  
   with)/concern oneself with  
       a. \_\_\_\_\_  
       b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 542.1 guānqíng                     N: kindness
543. nándào (shuō)...(ma)        MA: is it possible, "do you  
   really mean to say..."



553. děngyú V: equal to, equivalent to,  
tantamount to  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
554. tiē V: stick, paste; attach to  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
555. diànlíng N: bell, buzzer  
555.1 àn diànlíng VO: press bell, ring bell  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
556. duàn V: break, break off/sever  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
557. yàomiánhua N: medicated cotton
558. yìshí MA: for the time being  
a. \_\_\_\_\_
559. yíngyǎng N: nutrition

NOTES

- (523) a. It takes up a lot of time for me to study every day.
- (524) a. Please take good care of him.  
b. I said 'hi' to him downtown yesterday, but he didn't see me.
- (525) a. His face is always swollen; I don't think that's a normal phenomenon.
- (527) a. If it rains I'll have no choice but to stay here.  
(Or: If it rains I just won't be able to go.)  
b. I don't have much money, so I have no choice but to buy the cheaper car.  
c. So long as the wound doesn't get infected it will be OK.
- (529) a. The host entertained graciously.

L. 16

- (530) a. His face is swollen.
- b. If (your, his, etc.) face is swollen, why not apply some medicine to reduce the swelling?
- c. He bumped his head and it swelled up. (Or: He got a lump on the head from bumping into something.)
- (531) a. If you don't apply medicine to your wound there is a good possibility it will become infected.
- (532) a. One should wash his hands before eating.
- b. He often has a cigarette after meals.
- (533) a. It's a bit late for you to start feeling remorse now.
- (534) a. The doorbell didn't ring--probably the wire has been severed.
- (536) a. This kind of food is hard on your digestion. (Or: Things like this are hard to digest.)
- b. You don't have anything serious--just poor digestion.
- (538) a. He got lightheaded from losing too much blood.
- (539) a. After an operation, one should pay attention to nutrition.
- (540) a. I really am grateful to you for being so concerned about me.
- (542) a. He is very concerned about me.
- b. I'm extremely concerned about his health.
- (543) a. Is it possible that you're unhappy?! (Or: Do you mean to say you're unhappy?!)
- (544) a. Since he was broke, he moved from a first class hospital room to the ward (general or common room).
- (545) a. These clothes are torn--(I, you, etc.) can't wear them.
- b. I bumped my hand and tore (the skin on) it; it bled a lot.

- (548) a. Your face is cut--let me put some medicine on it for you!
- (549) a. He has frequent nosebleeds.
- (550) a. That medical officer is always operating on someone.
- (551) a. I apologize--please forgive me.
- (552) a. This kind of weather is really disgusting.
- (553) a. Three plus three equals six.
- (554) a. Look--there's a piece of gauze stuck to his face. What's wrong (with him)?
- (555) a. As soon as you push (ring) the doorbell I'll come out.
- (556) a. One can't hear clearly through a receiver when the antenna is broken.
- (558) a. For the time being, I can't resolve this matter.

## II. STORY

### Kōngjūn Yīyuàn

Chén Xīng-hàn shòushāng yǐhòu, zhùzai hòufāng kōngjūn yīyuànli yǒu yìtiān tāde nǚpéngyou Mǎlì lái kàn tā. Xīng-hàn kànjian Mǎlì lái le, zhīdao Mǎlì hěn guānxīn tā, xīnlǐ fēicháng gǎnji. Kěshi yìshí xiǎngbuqilai shuō shénme hǎo. Tā xiǎng shuō liǎngjù kèqì huà. Jiéguǒ tā shuō: "Nǐ zěnme lái le?" Mǎlì yìtīng yǒu yìdiǎnr shēngqì. Tā xīnlǐ xiǎng: "Nándào wǒ bùyinggāi lái ma?" "Wèn wǒ zěnme lái le, bù jiùshi děngyú shuō wǒ bùyinggāi lái ma?" Xīng-hàn bǎ huà shuōchulai yǐhòu, zìjǐ yě juéde yǒu yìdiǎnr búduì. Tā yǒu yìdiǎnr hòuhuī, jiù gǎnjīn dàoqiàn shuō: "Búshi. Wǒde

yìsi shì, zěnmé máfan nǐ, wǒ jēn bùgǎndāng." Mǎlì shuōde hěn hǎo, tā shuō: "Wǒ tīngshuō nǐ shòushāngle, wǒ hěn zhāojí. Suǒyǐ wǒ tèbié lái kànkan nǐ. Gāngcái wǒ gēn hùshi tànletan, zhīdao nǐ shòu de shāng, bútài yánzhòng wǒ jiu fàngxīnle. Xīwang nǐ hǎohāorde xiūxi xiūxi, dàgài yǒu sānge xīngqī jiu kěyǐ hǎo le."

Hòulái Xīng-hàn yǒu bǎ shòushāng yǐhòu zài yīyuànli de qíngxíng, xiángxìde gēn Mǎlì shuōle yíbiàn. Tā gàosong Mǎlì, tā zài qiánfāng yīnwei zuòde jípǔchē fānle, shòushāngle, yúshì zuò zhíshēngjī dào le hòufāng, yòu yòng jiùhùchē bǎ tā sòngdao yīyuàn. Děng dào le yīyuàn yìjiǎnchá, yīsheng shuō, jiùshì zuǒ tuǐ de shāng zhòng yìdiǎnr kěshi gútou méiduàn, yòngbuzhao dòng shǒushù. Búguò yīnwei liúxiě (xuě) liúde tài duō, suǒyǐ děi duō xiūxi. Qítāde dìfang, méishòu shénme zhòngshāng. Zuǒ shǒu pèngpòle yíkuài, yòutuǐ pèngzhǒngle yìdiǎnr, dōu bútài lǐhai. Yīsheng jiǎnchá wánle yǐhòu, jiu gěi tā xīle xī, shàngle yìdiǎnr yào, yòng yàomiánhua gēn shābù bāoqilai, tiēshang xiàngpígāo, hái gěi tā dǎle yìzhēn. Yīsheng shuō zuǒ tuǐ kǒngpà huì téng liǎngtiān, búguò búyào jīn. Zuì yào jīnde shì yíngyǎng gēn xiāohua, suǒyǐ jiào tā chí liǎngzhǒng yào, yìzhǒng zài fànqián chí, yìzhǒng zài fànhòu chí. Guò liǎngtiān, zuǒtuǐshàng de shāng, hǎo yìdiǎnr le, kěshi shāngkǒu yǒu yìdiǎnr fāyán, zhǒngle. Yīsheng lái kànle kan shìle shì wēndù méifāshāo. Yīsheng jiu shuō, shāngkǒu fāyán

shì shícháng yǒu de xiànxàng. Zhǐyào shì wēndù zhèngcháng,  
jiù méi shénme dà guānxi. Yàoshi fāshāo, nà jiù yǒu  
yìdiǎnr tāoyàn le. Tā hái shuō, děng guò liǎngtiān kànkàn,  
yàoshi yánzhòng de huà, yěxǔ děi kāidāo. Hòulái yě  
méifāshāo, jiànjiānde zhǒng jiù xiāole.

Hòulái tāmen yòu tánle tan nàge yīyuàn de qíngxíng.  
Xīng-hàn gào song Mǎlì shuō, nàge yīyuàn de shèbèi búcuò.  
Hùshi zhāohude hěn zhōudào, měitiān ànzhe shíhou lái gěi  
tā sòng fàn, shì wēndù, huàn yào. Yàoshi yǒu shénme shì,  
xiǎng jiào hùshi lái, tā kěyǐ àn tā chuáng qiántou de  
diàn mén, hùshi wǔlǐ de dēng jiù liàngle, hùshi kànjian tā  
nàge diàndēng liàngle, jiù lái kànkàn. Yīyuànli búyòng  
diàn líng, yīnwèi diàn líng yǒu shēngyīn, bùānjīng. Yàoshi  
bìng rén dōu àn diàn líng, diàn líng lǎo bùtíngde xiǎng,  
bìng rén yídìng dōu juéde fēicháng tāoyàn.

Xīng-hàn zhūde nàjiān bìngfánglǐ, yígòng yǒu liǎngge  
bìng rén. Tā gāng dào yīyuàn de nàtiān, nàjiān bìngfánglǐ  
jiù yǒu tā yíge rén. Dièrtiān jiù yòu lái yíwèi. Zhèwèi  
shì zài guófángbù gōngzuò, búshì kōngjūn. Tā zài lùshang  
zǒu, ràng qìchē zhuàngle, shòule shāng. Tāde shāng, bǐjiào  
zhòng yìdiǎnr, bǎ tuǐ zhuàngduànle, tóu yě pòle.

Hòulái Mǎlì wèn, zhège kōngjūn yīyuànli de bìng rén shì  
búshì yīnggāi dōu shì kōngjūn rényuán. Xīng-hàn shuō, zhège  
yīyuàn de míngzi jiù kōngjūn. Yīyuàn. kěshì bìng rén bìng  
bùyídìng dōu shì kōngjūn, qítā jūnshì jīguān de rényuán yě

kěyǐ dào zhège yīyuàn lái kàn bǐng. Kěshì kōngjūn zhàn dà duōshù. Dàgài zhàn bǎifēnzhī bāshí yīshàng.

Mǎlì zài nàr gēn Xīng-hàn suíbiàn tánhuà, hòulái hùshi lái, shuō, shíjiān dào le. Lái kàn bìngrén de kèrén děi zǒu le. Mǎlì gēn Xīng-hàn shuō, jiào tā hǎohāorde xiūxi, gēn tā shuō "zài jiàn", jiù zǒu le.

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. When I was moving things in the headquarters a few days ago, I carelessly hit my hand on the car and it bled profusely.
2. At that time, I did not feel it was serious. I applied some medicine, put on a piece of adhesive tape and went on working.
3. When evening came, my hand began to hurt and it became so painful that I could not sleep. I got up hurriedly and asked the doctor in headquarters what I should do.
4. The attitude of the doctor was very nice but a little bit careless. He turned my hand back and forth and looked at it this way and that (at this side and that side). The more he turned my hand, the more painful (it felt).
5. For the time being, I did not know what to do. I regretted that I didn't go to the public hospital.
6. Finally, the doctor said that I would probably have to have an operation as my hand had become so swollen.
7. At that time, my hand was swollen up like a small ball. When the doctor saw that it was so painful, he asked the officer on duty to use a headquarter's car and take me to the hospital.
8. The duty officer registered for me when we arrived at the hospital. The nurse pushed me to the operation room. I lay on the sick bed waiting for the doctor to operate on me.



9. The nurse first took off the adhesive tape and washed the wound. Ai ya! Unexpectedly it was infected.
10. The pain stopped as soon as the nurse gave me an injection. I couldn't tell whether that hand belonged to me or to someone else.
11. I was a little bit frightened when I saw the many kinds of knives which were to be used in the operation on the table beside my sick bed.
12. Two doctors came in. One seemed to be a very experienced doctor, the other one looked like a resident intern. I had no idea who would operate on me.
13. The older doctor finally said that I hit my hand too hard and that the bone was injured. For that reason, the wound was infected.
14. He went on saying that the bone was not broken and that it was not too serious. But it was unusual that one could hit it so hard.
15. Then the operation began. The doctor's hand moved very fast. Within five minutes, he had performed the operation, applied some medicine, put on a piece of gauze and adhesive tape and said, "Let him stay in the hospital a few days."
16. I had a private room (a room by myself) with a telephone and a buzzer. The nurse was very friendly and took care of me nicely. Furthermore, the Air Force paid for all of this.
17. The swelling did not begin to subside until the third day of my stay in the hospital. At that time, I knew I was about to (should) leave the hospital.
18. All my friends and the commanding officer were very concerned about me while I was in the hospital. I was most grateful to them.
19. The day I went back to school, we had an examination. I did not know what to do.
20. I apologized to the teacher by saying that my hand really could not hold a pen and I couldn't take the examination. Consequently, I wasn't tested (didn't take the test).

... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..

... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..

... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..

... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..

... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..  
... ..

... ..  
... ..

## Lesson 17

I. VOCABULARY

560. cháhuì N: tea party
561. zhǎngguān N: senior official;  
commanding officer
- 561.1 guānzhǎng N: military officer
562. chéngjì N: achievements, marks,  
scores, record
563. jīchǔ N/Att: base, foundation/basic,  
fundamental
- 563.1 dǎ jīchǔ VO: lay the foundation, lay  
the groundwork
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
564. jiǎnchá tígé VO: perform or undergo  
a physical  
examination
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 564.1 tígé jiǎnchá N: physical examination
565. jiànkāng SV/N: healthy/health
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 565.1 kāngjiàn SV: healthy
566. qiān zì (or qiān míng) VO/N: sign (one's name),  
endorse/signature
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_
567. zhìyu A: as to, with regard to, as  
far as...is concerned
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
568. qīnzì A: personally, in person
- a. \_\_\_\_\_

L. 17

569. qiú xué VO: pursue an education  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 569.1 qiú zhīshi VO: pursue knowledge
570. chóubèi V: prepare  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
571. zhòngshì V: view as important, take seriously, consider significant, think highly of  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 571.1 qīngshì V: (opposite of above) look down on, underrate, belittle
572. jùhuì (V/N: jùhui) VO/V: have meeting/get together, N: meeting, gathering  
 572.1 jùjí V: assemble, gather, flock together, congregate
573. fèndòu V/N: fight, struggle  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
574. hǎiguān N: Customs (House)
575. xíngdòng V/N: act, move/act, action, movement  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
- [ 575.1 xíngdòng zìyóu] N: freedom of movement  
 [ 575.2 xíngdòngqílai] RC: go into action  
 575.3 jǔdòng N: behavior, conduct, deportment
576. hùzhào N: passport
577. huā qián VO: spend money  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_

577. huā (continued)  
 577.1 huāfèi V/N: expend/expenditure  
 577.2 huādiào RC: spend (time, money, etc.)
578. rùjìngzhèng N: entry permit  
 578.1 chūjìngzhèng N: exit permit  
 578.2 lùtiáo N: travel pass
579. kuàilè SV/N: be happy/happiness  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 579.1 xīnnián kuàilè Ph: Happy New Year!
580. guānfèi N: government financed  
 580.1 gōngfèi N: subsidized (by government  
 or private industry)
581. gōngshì\* N: official business
582. liúxué V: to study abroad  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 582.1 liúxuésheng N: students studying overseas  
 or students who have  
 studied abroad
583. liúlì SV: be fluent  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
584. nánmiǎn A: unavoidable  
 584.1 miǎnbuliǎo A: unavoidable  
 584.2 bùmiǎn A: unavoidable
585. nǚlì V/A: strive (to), work hard  
 (to), make an effort (to)  
 /energetically  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
586. píqi N: temper, disposition  
 586.1 fā píqi VO: lose one's temper  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_

L. 17

586. píqi (continued)  
 586.2 méipíqi SV: easygoing  
 586.3 yōupíqi SV: temperamental
587. shífēn A: 100%, fully, completely  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
588. shífǒu V: is or is not, whether or not (same as shì bushi)  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 588.1 yǒuwú V: have or have not, whether there is or isn't (same as yǒu méiyǒu)
589. tígé N: physical condition  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
590. zài kěnéng fànwéi (zhī)nèi Ph: insofar as possible  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
591. túzhāng N: a seal or "chop"  
 591.1 gài túzhāng VO: affix one's "chop" to  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 591.2 kè túzhāng VO: carve a "chop"
592. tùrán MA: suddenly, abruptly, unexpectedly  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
593. tóngzhì \* N: comrade
594. sòngxíng V: see someone off  
 594.1 cíxíng V: say one's goodbyes (to someone staying behind), pay a farewell visit  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
595. wànyī MA: in case, if by any chance (lit. one in 10,000)

595. wànyī (continued)

a. \_\_\_\_\_

596. wèishēng

SV/N: sanitary, hygienic/  
hygiene

597. yìngfu

V: cope with, deal with,  
handle

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

598. yǔyán

N: language; speech

[ 598.1 yǔyánxué]

N: linguistics

598.2 yīngyǔ

N: English language

599. yùfáng

V/Att/N: take precautions against,  
prevent/precautionary,  
preventive/precaution,  
prevention

599.1 dǎ yùfángzhēn

VO: vaccinate, be vaccinated,  
(give or get a  
"preventative shot")

a. \_\_\_\_\_

600. yuánzé

N: principle, axiom, tenet  
Att: of principle

a. \_\_\_\_\_

b. \_\_\_\_\_

NOTES

(563) a. His grades are poor because when he was in high school he failed to lay the groundwork (learn the basics).

(564) a. I've asked Dr. Zhang to give me a physical.

(565) a. That child appears to be very healthy.

b. There is nothing wrong with his health. (Or: He doesn't have any health problems.)

(566) a. Please sign once here.

(566) (continued)

b. Is this his signature?

(567) a. As for how to learn English, I don't know.

(568) a. I personally cooked for him.

(569) a. Are you going to China to pursue your education?

(570) a. We've only been preparing for this celebration for three days, so the program is not too good.

(571) a. The president thinks very highly of psywar.

(573) a. He has fought forty years for freedom for China.

(575) a. You must pay attention to his actions.

b. For the past two days, the president's movements have been very secret.

(577) a. He has spent a considerable sum of money in the pursuit of an education.

(579) a. It seems to me he's quite happy.

(582) a. He's gone to China to study abroad.

(583) a. He speaks very fluent Mandarin, but his pronunciation is not too accurate.

(585) a. You have to work a little harder. (Or: You have to make a greater effort.)

b. He doesn't make an effort to study.

(586) a. As soon as my wife loses her temper I get out of the way.

(587) a. I don't fully believe what he said. (Or: I don't have complete confidence in his word.)

(588) a. I don't know whether or not this can be done.

(589) a. His physical condition is not too good--whenever it gets cold he catches cold.

(590) a. Insofar as possible, please lend me some assistance.



- (591) a. Once you have signed your name, you must also affix your seal.
- (592) a. He abruptly quit the Air Force.
- (594) a. Before leaving, I must go to a friend's home to say my goodbyes. (Or: to pay a farewell visit)
- (595) a. But if he should by any chance get sick, what then?
- (596) a. This food is unsanitary--it is not edible.  
b. He's always sick because he doesn't pay any attention to hygiene.
- (597) a. This matter is very difficult to deal with.  
b. How should I deal with that person?
- (599) a. I have had three vaccinations in all.
- (600) a. This is a matter of principle!  
b. His principle was right, but he went about it in the wrong way.

## II. STORY

### Chūguó Shǒuxù

Chén Xīng-hàn yǒu yìtiān hūran jiēdào yíge mìnglíng, zhèngfǔ yào pài tā dào Měiguó qù shòuxùn. Zhège shìqing, tā jiēdào mìnglíng yìqián, yìdiǎn dōu bùzhīdao. Dāngrán zhè shì tā suǒ zuì xīwang de shìqing. Tā lìkè jiù huí jiā bǎ zhège xiāoxi gàosong tā fùmǔ, tā fùmǔ yě fēicháng gāoxìng. Tāmen dàjiā dōu hěn xīngfèn. Yìshí wèntí hěn duō, hǎoxiàng hěn fùzá. Qíshí yǒude wèntí hěn jiǎndān, yòngbǎo táoqiǎn. Kěshì yīnwèi zhège xiāoxi láide hěn túrán, suǒyǐ yìshí tāmen bùzhīdao yīngdāng zěnme yìngfu.

Chén Xīng-hàn de gǎnxiǎng shì zhèngfǔ dài tā búcuò. Tā píngshí nǚlì fèndòu, tā gōngzuò de chéngji yíjīng yǒu rén zhòngshì le. Tā juéde yīngdāng chèn zhège jīhui, hǎohāorde qù qiúxué, jiānglái huíguó yǐhòu, néng wèi guójiā fúwù. Kěshi yòu yìxiǎng, juéde zìjǐ gèfāngmiàn de jīchǔ dǎde bùshífēn hǎo, yóuqíshi duìyu yǔyán fāngmiàn de xùnliàn búgòu. Yīngyǔ búdàn shuōde bùliúlì, liǎojiě fāngmiàn yě yǒu hěn duō de wèntí, jiānglái shòuxùnde shíhou, yídìng yǒu hěn duō de kùnnan.

Tā fùqīn suǒ kǎolǚde shì Chén Xīng-hàn de píqi bútai hǎo. Niánqīng rén zuòshì zǒngshì bùkèkào. Zhècì chūguó liúxué, yǒu hěn duō de shòuxù, xiàng bàn hùzhào a, jiǎnchá tǐgē a, zài hǎiguān jiǎnchá xínglǐ a, dōu děi Chén Xīng-hàn qīnzì qù bàn. Tā shífǒu néng bànde zhōudao, zhēn shì bùgǎn shuō. Suǒyǐ tā zhǐ néng quàn tā yíqiè xiǎoxīn.

Tā mǔqīn suǒ kǎolǚ de yǒu liǎngjiàn shì. Yíjiàn shì Chén Xīng-hàn de jiànkāng wèntí. Língwài yíjiàn jiùshì qián de wèntí. Chén Xīng-hàn de shēntǐ suǐrán búcuò, kěshi yàoshi líkāi Zhōngguó, chī de dōngxī bùtóng le, qíhou yě yídìng hěn bùyiyàng, yòu méiyǒu rén zhāohu tā, suǒyǐ juéde hěn búfàngxīn. Zhìyú qián ne, suǐrán yíqiè dōu shì guānfèi, kěshi tā xiǎng yòng qián yídìng děi liúshén, bìxū zài kěnéng fànwéi zhīnèi shǎo huā qián, yīnwei zài wàiguó méiyǒu qīnqi péngyou, yàoshi wànyī qián búgòu yòng le, shéi néng bāngmáng? Suǒyǐ tā quàn Xīng-hàn duì wèishēng děi

zhùyì, duì yòng qián dǐ liúshén.

Tāmen suǒ tāolùn de, dàbùfen dōu shì yuánzéde wèntí. Shíjìshangde shìqing, Chén Xīng-hàn dǐ qù jiàn tāde zhǎngguān. Dièrtiān, tāde zhǎngguān zhāoji Chén Xīng-hàn hǎi yǒu jǐge gēn tā yíkuàir qù de tóngzhì, gēn tāmen tán yitan, gào-song tāmen zhècì pài tāmen chūguó shòuxùn de mùdi. Bìngqiě tèbié tíchulai tāmen duì guójiā de zéren. Tā hǎi gào-song tāmen, duì yíqiède xíngdòng, suíshí, suídì dōu dǐ tèbié zhùyì, búyào jiào biérén pīping. Zuìhòu shuōdao tāmen bàn chūguó shòuxùde shìqing. Měi yíge rén fāgei tāmen yìzhāng shuōmíngshū, nàzhāng shuōmíngshūshang xiězhe, tāmen yīngdāng dào shénme jīguān qù bàn shénme shòuxù. Shénme shòuxù xiān bàn, shénme shòuxù hòu bàn, dōu xiěde hěn qīngchu. Yǒude shòuxù, búbi tāmen qīnzi qù bàn. Tāmende dānwèi, kěyǐ yòng gōngshì tì tāmen bàn. Bīfang shuō, líng hùzhào, líng rùjìngzhèng, chūjìngzhèng, dēng dēng. Zhèxiē shì suīrán búbi zìjǐ bàn, kěshì zhàoxiàng a, tián biǎo a, gài túzhāng a, háishi dōu dǐ qīnzi zuò. Zhìyú jiǎnchá tígé, dǎ yùfángzhēn, dāngrán gèng shì fēi qīnzi bùkě.

Tāmen yǒu liǎngge yuè de shíjiān chóubèi, liǎngge yuè de shíjiān, shízài shuōqilai, shì hěn duǎn. Yīnwei chule bàn shòuxù yǐwài, tāmen dōu yǒu tāmen zìjǐ de shìqing. Tāmen dǐ dào gè qīnqi péngyou de dìfang qù cícixíng. Dāngrán tāmende qīnqi péngyou yě nánmiǎn yào qīng tāmen

chīchifàn, gěi tāmen sòngsongxíng. Tāmende tóngshì, yě dōu  
yuànyì zài tāmen dòngshēn yìqián jùhuì jùhuì, suǒyǐ yě  
jùxíng yíge cháhùi, dàjiā tántan. Chén Xīng-hàn duì zhèxiē  
rén, dōu fēicháng gǎnji.

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. Formerly, in China, it was very difficult for a person to study abroad with government support.
2. One had to study hard (in pursuit of knowledge) if he wanted to study abroad at government expense. Aside from preparing for all kinds of special tests, he must have attained a good foundation in English.
3. For this reason, many people ruined their health due to hard work in preparing for the examinations.
4. I had a very intelligent friend who not only spoke English fluently, but also was unusually good in other subjects.
5. He never thought of going abroad to study. He felt that (for) one to speak fluent English (be fluent in English), he did not necessarily have to study abroad.
6. He thought that it was a good deal to study in a foreign country with government support, so he was willing to try.
7. Of course, he succeeded and all of his friends on hearing this news were very happy.
8. Though he had a lot of ability, he worked but was carefree (he was rather carefree in doing things). He wasn't at all worried about the necessary preparations for leaving the country to study.
9. Other people wanted to finish up those procedures which had to be done to go out of the country (and) all were always busy and tense. Today they had their physical checkups and tomorrow they had to go out to get exit visas.

10. But the friend I mentioned seemed not to be concerned about these things. He felt that this "public matter" could be done anytime.
11. Ever since all his friends knew that he was going to leave the country, many wanted to get together with him and so they planned to have a farewell party in his honor.
12. Some people suggested having a tea party for him; others advocated giving him some money. Since those courtesies were unavoidable in China, he did not refuse.
13. Whenever friends asked him whether he had received his passport or whether he had the preventative shots, he always answered this way: "It is still early."
14. Friends felt that this man was rather unusual and wondered why he was not paying close attention to all those procedures which had to be done by one who wants to go abroad to study.
15. One day he received a notification from the government saying that all of the government-supported overseas students must have all the procedures completed within two weeks if at all possible.
16. He worried after he received this notification. He knew that he had to go do all these things in person.
17. In the morning, he went to a government organization to find an official to sign in (the paper). In the afternoon he also had to go to another place to have that official paper stamped. He had no time for tea parties.
18. He observed (recognized) (had) one principle in his life and that was: No matter how busy he was, he had to be especially concerned about nutrition and sanitation.
19. He felt that one's own health was most important, and other things were not of such (so much) importance (not so important).
20. Many friends went to see him off the day he was boarding the ship. He was so grateful to them that without knowing it (unconsciously), he began to cry.



## Lesson 18

I. VOCABULARY

601. zhēnzhèng SV: be real, genuine, true  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
602. jiālún M: gallon (transliteration of the English)
603. jiā yóu VO: refuel, take on fuel
604. zhìshǎo MA: at least  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 604.1 zhìduō MA: at most  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
605. zhǔrén N: host, master  
 605.1 zuò zhǔrén VO: act as host, be master
606. zhùzhǐ N: address, place of residence
607. chuī V: to blow  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 607.1 chuī niú IE: boast, brag
608. fālěng V: get or have the chills  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 608.1 fābái V: blanch, turn pale, be pale  
 608.2 fāpàng V: get fat
609. fēnglàng N: (sea)storm, wind and waves  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
610. hǎiyuán N: seaman, sailor  
 610.1 shuǐshǒu N: seaman, sailor
611. hángchéng N: route; journey; range; distance to be traveled

612. xiǎng jiā VO/SV: long for home/homesick  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
613. xìngmíng N: full name (surname and given name)
614. huí tóu VO/MA: turn the head/shortly, before long, in a while  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 614.1 huítóujiàn Ph: see you soon
615. rào V: wind around, go around  
 615.1 rào lù VO: take a detour  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_  
 c. \_\_\_\_\_
616. gǎngkǒu N: port, harbor  
 616.1 jìn gǎng VO: enter port  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 616.2 jūngǎng N: naval dock, military harbor
- 616.3 shānggǎng N: a trade port, commercial port
- 616.4 zìyóugǎng N: free port  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
617. guāngle SV: shiny; exposed, bare, naked; used "clean" up  
 617.1 chīgūāng(1e) RC: all eaten up, completely devoured  
 617.2 hēgūāng(1e) RC: all drunk up, drunk dry  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
618. lìliang N: strength, vigor, power  
 618.1 qìli N: (physical) strength  
 618.2 lìqi N: (physical) strength



619. lúnchuán N: a steamship  
 619.1 Zōngtǒng Lúnchuán N: American President Line  
 Gōngsī
620. nánguò SV: difficult, hard to endure;  
 sad, troubled  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
621. biāozhǔn N: standard, criterion  
 SV: standard
622. shēngyì N: business
623. shùnfēng N: tail wind, favorable wind  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 623.1 nìfēng N: head wind, adverse wind
624. suìle SV: shattered, broken  
 624.1 shuāisui(1e) RC: fall and shatter  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
625. dǎ yú VO: catch fish (with nets)  
 625.1 dǎyúde N: fisherman
626. dài V: treat  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
627. dìqiú N: the earth, the globe  
 627.1 píqiú N: rubber ball
628. dìfangshang(de) Att: local  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
629. dìguó N: empire  
 629.1 dìguózhǔyì N: imperialism  
 629.2 Dìguó Fàndiàn N: Empire Hotel
630. cāng N: ship's hold, ship's cabin  
 630.1 chuāncāng N: ship's hold, ship's cabin  
 630.2 kècāng N: passenger cabin  
 630.3 sānděngcāng N: third class cabin  
 630.4 tóuděngcāng N: first class cabin  
 630.5 zuòcāng (or jīcāng) N: cockpit
631. cūnzi N: village

631. cūnzi (continued)  
631.1 cūnzhǎng N: village headman, village chief or elder  
631.2 cūnzhuāng N: village
632. tóngyì V: agree
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
633. yìzhōu NU-M: one round, one circuit, one cycle, one lap
- a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 633.1 rào dìqiú yìzhōu Ph: to circle the earth once

NOTES

- (601) a. What must one do to find true happiness?
- (604) a. He has at least \$1000.
- b. I can eat three bowls of rice at most.
- (607) a. When a spring breeze blows against you, it isn't cold at all.
- (608) a. One moment he's got the chills and the next he's burning up--I don't know what he's coming down with.
- (609) a. The wind and waves at sea were very heavy, so everyone got seasick.
- (612) a. He longed for home all day, neither eating nor speaking.
- (614) a. I called to him for some time, but he didn't turn his head to look (didn't look back).
- b. Will you come to my home again soon?
- (615) a. You must run around this house three times.
- b. This road is out--you'll have to detour onto that one.
- c. We drove around the city for quite a while and never did find his home.

- (616) a. What time did that boat enter port?  
 b. Hong Kong is a free port.
- (617) a. By the time I got to his home, the food and drink were all gone.
- (620) a. I felt very troubled to hear he was sick.
- (623) a. With favorable winds one can arrive in two days.
- (624) a. This bowl has already been dropped and shattered.
- (626) a. He treats his friends very well, but he treats his wife "rotten."
- (628) a. None of the locals likes him.
- (632) a. I agree in principle with what he said.
- (633) a. He ran one lap around the athletic field.

## II. STORY

### Jīngguò Rìběn

Xīng-hàn bǎ xínglǐ shōushihǎole, fùmǔ sòng tā dào mǎtou qù shàng chuán. Dào le mǎtou, kànjian hěn duō péngyou dōu lái sòng tā. Mǎlì yě lái le, zhànzai nà hǎoxiàng hěn nánguò shìde. Hǎiyuán bǎ xínglǐ náshàng chuán qù yǐhòu, Xīng-hàn gāi shàng chuán le, gēn dàjiā shuō "zài jiàn". Nà shíhou, tā fùqin gēn tā shuō: "Nǐ zuìhǎo bǎ hùzhào gēn gèzhǒng zhèngmíng dōu fàngzai yíkuàir, xiàchuán jiǎnchá de shíhou, fāngbian." Mǔqin shuō: "Xīwang nǐ néng yǒnggōng niànshū. Búlùn zuò shénme, dōu zìxì yìdiǎnr, nàme, wǒ jiù fàngxīn le." Péngyoumen yě dōu shuō: "Yí lù píngān." Nà shíhou, Xīng-hàn gēn Mǎlì hǎoxiàng yǒu hěn duō huà yào shuō, kěshi yīnwei bǐcǐ dōu hěn jǐnzhāng, jiéguǒ shéi yě

shuōbuchulaile. Hòulái Mǎlì tuīzhe Xīng-hàn shuō: "Nǐ shàngchuán ba! Shùn fēng, Shùn fēng."

Xīng-hàn shàngle chéng, zhàn zài chuāncāng ménkǒu, kàn zhe zhàn zài ànshàng de nàxiē rén, xīnlǐ yě hěn nánguò. Chuán kāile, tā hái bùkěn dào chuāncānglǐ qù, zhàn zài wàitóu gēn Mǎlì yòng shǒu bīfang, hǎoxiàng shì shuō: "Qǐng huí, qǐng huí, qǐng cháng gěi wǒ xiěxìn." Chuán yuè lái yuè yuǎn le, hòulái Xīng-hàn jiù shéi yě kàn bu jiàn le.

Chuán chūle gǎngkǒu, jiàn jiānde kuàiqilaile, fēnglàng yuè lái yuè dà. Xīng-hàn juéde yǒu diǎnr tóuyūn, tóngshí yǒu fēng chuī zài shēnshàng, juéde yǒu diǎnr fālěng, yúshì jiù zhǐhǎo dào zìjǐde fángjiān qù xiūxi.

Guòle jǐtiān, dào le Rìběn, yǒu yíwèi Zhōu xiānsheng dào mǎtóu lái jiē tā. Zhōu xiānsheng shì tā fùqīnde péngyou, xiànzài zài Rìběn zuò shēngyì. Yīnwei Xīng-hàn yào zài Rìběn huàn yìtiáo lúnchuán dào Měiguó qù, suǒyǐ bǐxū zài Rìběn dēng jǐtiān, dàgài zhǐshǎo yě děi dēng wǔliùtiān. Zhōu xiānsheng bǎ tā sòngdao Dìguó Fàndiàn duì tā shuō: "Nǐ hǎohǎo xiūxi ba, míngtiān wǒ lái kàn nǐ, kěyǐ péi nǐ wán jǐtiān." Hòulái Zhōu xiānsheng nǎchu yìfēng hángkōngxìn lái jiāogěi Xīng-hàn, xiào zhe shuō: "Zhe shì wǒ jīntian jiēdàode, shì yíwèi Yáng xiǎojiě cóng Táiwān jǐlái de." Shuōwánle, Zhōu xiānsheng xiào le xiào, jiù zǒule.

Xīng-hàn tǎng zài chuángshàng kàn Mǎlì jǐlai de xìn, hòulái zěnme yě shuì bu zháo, xīnlǐ yǒu diǎnr xiǎngjiā, yúshì

jiu gěi Mǎlì xiě huíxìn, bìngqiě yě gěi fùmǔ xiěle yíféng.

Dièrtiān zǎoshang, Zhōu xiānsheng láile, tóng tā yíkuàir chí zǎofàn. Zhōu xiānsheng wèn tā zài chuánshang de shēnghuo zěnmeyàng? Xīng-hàn shuō, suīran hángchéng hěn duǎn, kěshi nàjǐtiān zhènghǎo yùjian bàofēngyǔ, fēnglàng hěn dà. Kěshi chuánshang dài rén hěn hǎo, chīde yě búcuò. Zhōu xiānsheng wèn tā zài Rìběn yǒu shénme jìhua. Xīng-hàn shuō, xīwang dào gèchù qù cānguan cānguan, bìngqiě shùnbìan mǎi yíge Rìběn zhàoxiàngjī, yīnwei tā yíqiánde nàge zhàoxiàngjī bú tài hǎo, bìngqiě yě huàile. Zhōu xiānsheng shuō, nǐ yuànyì dào shénme dìfang qù cānguan dōu kěyǐ, yàoshi shíjiān láibují de huà, děng nǐ cóng Měiguó huílai de shíhou, hái kěyǐ jìxù cānguan. Xīng-hàn shuō, bùchéng. Yīnwei huílai de shíhou, yào zuò biéde hángxiàn de chuán, jīngguò Ōuzhōu huíqù, zhèyàng jiu kěyǐ rào dìqiú yìzhōu le. Suǒyǐ yàoshi kěnéng, zuìhǎo zhècì duō cānguan jìge dìfang. Zhōu xiānsheng tīngle tāde jìhua yǐhòu shuō: hěn hǎo, jīntian wǒmen jiu chūqù, wǒ xiān dài dào xiāngxia qù kàn yíge cūnzi, nàge cūnzi lí hǎiàn hěn jìn, nàrde rén dǎyúde zhàn èrfēnzhīyī, wǒ rènshi nàge cūnzhǎng. Tā zài dìfangshang hěn yǒu dìwei, yě hěn yǒu lìliang, tā duì péngyou yě fēicháng rèxīn, tā kěyǐ gěi wǒmen jiángjiang Rìběn rén shēnghuo de qíngxíng. Gāngcái wǒ gěi tā dǎle yíge diànhuà, tā shuō fēicháng huānyíng, bìngqiě hái shuō tā zuò zhǔrén, yào qǐng wǒmen chí yíci zhēnzhèng de Rìběn

fàn, yàoshi nǐ tóngyì de huà, wǒmen lìkè jiù qù. Xīng-hàn shuō dāngrán hěn yuànyì qù, búguò ràng zuò zhǔrén, zhēn bùhǎoyìsi. Zhōu xiānsheng gào song Xīng-hàn shuō, wǒ xiān qù jiā jǐjiālún de qìyóu qù, nǐ chīwánle, jiù chūlai zhǎo wǒ. Xīng-hàn juéde Riběn de zǎofàn hěn hǎochī jiù dōu chī wánle. Ránhòu jiù dào ménkǒur qù zhǎo Zhōu xiānsheng. Yīnwei méilíushén, zhènghǎo yóu liǎngwèi Měiguó kōngjūn wàng lǐ zǒu, yào jìnlái, zhènghēn tā zhuàngshang. Nà liǎngwèi Měiguó kōngjūn kànjian Xīng-hàn shǒulǐ nǎzhe yí fèn Zhōngguó bào, zhīdao tā yíding shì Zhōngguó rén, jiù lìkè yòng biāozhǔn Běipíng huà shuō: "Duìbuqǐ." Xīng-hàn juéde hěn qíguài, bǐcǐ wènle xìngmíng, zhùzhǐ yìhòu, yíkuàir shuō, huítóu zài tán ba.

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. It was discovered that (that) fisherman who had been fishing for many years along the sea coast had been doing intelligence work for the enemy.
2. In fact, all the people in the village liked him very much. He was always courteous. He was a model common man.
3. He went to all the meetings in which problems were discussed. But he seldom expressed his opinion. He agreed on everything the people decided. He was never opposed to the opinions of others.
4. That village is in a military harbor. The fishing vessels going in and out all have to pass through that harbor.

5. The ships that stop in that harbor are mostly military ships. There are very few commercial boats. Occasionally there are some submarines.
6. That military harbor is a naval training base. Usually there are four or five ships sailing back and forth in the vicinity of the harbor.
7. According to what we know, that harbor is very well equipped. Aside from several docks, there are loading stations, gasoline dumps, naval headquarters, naval clubs, and so on.
8. Usually there are many seamen and naval personnel dining and wining in the village near the port. The village is a very bustling place.
9. This fisherman, in addition to fishing, also operates a small restaurant. His business was very good because naval personnel often went there to eat.
10. The fisherman knew those (the) naval personnel very well. He knew both the names and addresses of those (the) naval men.
11. Sometimes when someone could not pay (the bill), that fisherman would say: "It doesn't matter. Today I play host..." He treated those (the) naval personnel very well.
12. Through frequent conversations with these naval people, this fisherman knew a great deal about naval affairs.
13. He often inquired about the navigation routes of the submarines and their sailing range. He inquired about how Chinese naval conditions were (how the Chinese naval situation was). He also wanted to know what ships sailed around the globe.
14. One day, a naval intelligence man ate in the fisherman's restaurant and he felt that the questions the fisherman asked were questions that should not have been asked by a common (ordinary) person.
15. All of a sudden, the naval intelligence man felt that this fisherman was not so reliable. He left right after the meal.
16. The next day when the fisherman went out fishing, the naval intelligence group sent a few people to

L. 18

16. (continued) investigate the restaurant.
17. As a result, they found a short wave radio receiver and some topographic charts of the harbor. Then they were both angry and tense.
18. They took these things back and discussed how to arrest this fisherman. He absolutely was an enemy.
19. On that day, the sea was very calm. There was no wind and no waves. The people in the intelligence group thought that the fisherman definitely would return home pretty early.
20. When the fisherman's fishing boat came back, (he) saw many naval personnel standing in front of the restaurant. He immediately realized that he was in trouble, but it was too late.



## Lesson 19

I. VOCABULARY

634. chén V: sink  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
635. jīqìjiān N: engine room
636. jiǎbǎn N: deck (of a ship)
637. zhìfú N: uniform
638. jiù V: save, rescue  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 638.1 jiùshēngchuán N: lifeboat  
 638.2 jiùshēngquān N: lifesaver, life belt  
 638.3 jiùshēngyī N: life jacket
639. quān(r) N: circle, ring  
 639.1 xiàngpíquānr N: rubber band
640. fāng SV: square  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
641. hǎilǐ M: nautical mile, knot
642. hángǎi dìtú N: navigational chart
643. Xiàwēiyí PW: Hawaii
644. xīndàlù N: new continent
645. xuǎnjǔ V/N: elect/election  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- b. \_\_\_\_\_





L. 19

- (647) b. His breathing has already stopped.
- (648) a. We have plenty of manpower.
- (653) a. I feel that country has a very democratic government.
- (654) a. This character is too "slanty." (Or: This character is written too much at an angle.)
- (656) a. The phenomenon of social inequality no longer exists.
- b. From their government they demanded freedom and equality. (Or: They made demands upon the government for freedom and equality.)
- (657) a. Our losses in the last war weren't heavy; how many men did you lose?
- (658) a. Is he a foreigner?
- (659) a. The wind and waves are heavy today, so the boat is rocking violently.
- b. If you shake that tree, the apples will fall off.
- c. This engine (motor) is hand-cranked.
- (661) a. This thing is rounder than that one.
- b. This is very round, that isn't so round.

## II. STORY

### Chuánshang

Xīng-hàn jiēdào Zǒngtǒng Lúnchuán Gōngsī de diànhuà,  
ràng tā Xīngqīèr xiàwǔ qù shàngchuán. Dào le Xīngqīèr,  
Xīng-hàn xiān dào Zhōu xiānsheng jiā qù cíxíng, ránhòu tā  
jīngguò yínháng de shíhou, shùnbìan bǎ méihuāwánde Riběn  
qián huànchéng Měijīn. Xiàwǔ, Zhōu xiānsheng, Zhōu tàitai  
dàizhe tāmen de háizi dào fàndiàn lái sòng Xīng-hàn. Zhāng

Wéi-lián tóng Jiǎ Línkěn yě zài nàr. Yīnwei rénsù tài duō,  
 suǒyǐ tāmen děi zuò liǎngliàng qìchē dào mǎtóu qù. Dào le  
 nàr, kànjian shàng chuán de, sòng péngyou de, rén duōjíle.  
 Xīng-hàn shàngchuán yǐhòu, juéde zhètiáo chuán fēicháng hǎo,  
 zìjǐ de fángjiān suǐrán shì sǎndēng cāng, kěshi yě xiāngdāng  
 jiǎngjiu. Fángjiānlǐ gèzhǒng shèbèi dōu yǒu, hěn fāngbian.  
 Chuán gāng yìkǎi, jiù yǒu yíge chuánshàng de rén gēn dàjiā  
 jiǎng jiùshēngchuán de yòngfǎ, bìngqiě hái gào sòng dàjiā  
 yīnggāi zěnme yàng chuān jiùshēngyī. Xīng-hàn dōu jìzhule.  
 Wǎnshàng Xīng-hàn dào fàntīng qù chí wǎnfàn, fàntīnglǐ yǒu  
 hěn duō zhuōzi, yǒu fāngde, yě yǒu yuán de, dàjiā kěyǐ  
 suíbiàn zuò, suíbiàn tán. Xīng-hàn rènshì le hěn duō xīn  
 péngyou. Chīwǎn le wǎnfàn, chuánshàng yǎn diànyǐng qīng  
 dàjiā kàn. Nàge diànyǐng de gùshi shì shuō: Cóngqián  
 yǒu yìtiáo xiǎochuán, zài hǎibiānr fùjìn zǒu, yīnwei yùjian  
 nífēng, chuánshàng de rén yòu zuò de hěn piān, suǒyǐ  
 xiǎochuán yìbiānr qīng, yìbiānr zhòng, zǒu de hěn bùpíngwěn.  
 Hòulái, yīnwei fēnglàng tài dà, chuán yáode lǐhai, chuánlǐ  
 jìnqù hěn duō shuǐ, kàn zhe hǎoxiàng yào chén le, chuánshàng  
 de rén jiù dōu gǎnkuài chuān jiùshēngyī, nà jiùshēngchuán,  
 jiéguǒ chuán méichén zhǐ sūnshì le yìdiǎnr língsuì dōngxi,  
 rén dōu bèi jiùdao fùjìn de lùdìshàng qù le. Xīng-hàn kàn le  
 zhège diànyǐng yǐhòu, juéde zhège diànyǐng duì zuò chuán  
 de rén hěn yǒu yòngchū. Yīnwei kàn le nàge diànyǐng, kěyǐ  
 xué zěnme chuān jiùshēngyī, shénmede. Chū le nàge piānzi

yíwài, hái yǒu jǐge xīnwén piān. Yǒu yìzhāng yǎnde shì  
Měiguó zěnmeyàng xuǎnjǔ zǒngtǒng gēn zěnmeyàng xuǎnjǔ  
dìfang dài biǎo. Hái yǒu hēn duō dōu shì guójiā xīnwén.  
Xīng-hàn kàn wán le diànyǐng, huídao fángjiān tǎngzai  
chuángshàng. Guòle yìhuǐr, shuǐzháole. Hūrán zuòle yíge  
mèng. Hǎoxiàng yǒu hēn duō xuésheng, zuòzai kèshìlǐ dōu  
chuānzhe zhīfú, fēicháng zhèngqí, tā zìjǐ shì jiàoguān,  
zhànzai qiántou duì dàjiā jiǎng míngzhǔzhǔyì de dàoli,  
bǐngqiě hái shuō quánshìjiè de rénlèi dōu yīngdāng píngděng,  
bùyīngdāng qīnfàn biérén de zìyóu...Hūrán yǒu rén dàshengr  
jiào mén, bǎ Xīng-hàn xiàxīngle. Tā gǎnkuài bǎ mén kāikāi,  
cái zhīdao shì yíwèi xīn rènshi de péngyou lái zhǎo tā qù  
cānguān chuánshàng de shèbèi. Xīng-hàn gēn tā chūle  
fángjiān cái zhīdao tiān yǐjīng hēn liǎngle. Tāmen dǎsuan  
dào jīqíjiān qù cānguān. Kěshi gāng yídao jīqíjiān de  
ménkǒu, jiù juéde fēicháng rè, hǎoxiàng lián hūxí dōu yǒu  
yìdiǎnr kùnnan. Suǒyǐ yě méijìnqu, jiù gǎnkuài dào biéde  
fángjiān qùle. Hòulái tāmen yòu dào chuánshàng de túshūguǎn  
qù. Dìfang suīrán búsuàn tài dà, kěshi huánjīng hái búcuò,  
qiángshàng hái guàzhe hēn duō xiàngpiānr, yǒu yìzhāng jiù  
shì zhètiáo chuán de xiàngpiānr. Yě yǒu yìzhāng shì yìtiáo  
xúnyǎngjiàn de xiàngpiānr. Xīng-hàn dōu zìxíde kànle yíkan.  
Tā hái kànjian hēn duō hánghǎi dìtú, shénmede. Hòulái, yǒu  
yíge rén zhǐzhe yìzhāng Tàipíngyǎng de dìtú, gēn Xīng-hàn  
shuō: "Nǐ kàn, zhèr shì Táiwān; zhèr shì Riběn; zhèr jiùshì

Xiàwēiyí..." Xīng-hàn zài dītúshang yíkàn, cóng Rìběn dào Měiguó zhēn shì hěn yuǎn. Kěshi zhètiáo chuán zǒude hěn kuài, rúguǒ néng bǎochi xiànzài de sùdù, dàgài xiàyuè sānhào jiu kěyǐ dào le.

Xīng-hàn xiǎng: Rénlèi zhēn shì yuè lái yuè jìnbù, jiāotōng yě yuè lái yuè fāngbian le. Cóngqián Gēlún bù fāxiàn Xīndàlù de shíhou, chuán zǒu de shíhou dōu shì kào rénli gēn fēnglì. Nà shì duōme kùnnan! Kěshi xiànzài ne, shénme dōu yòng jīqi le, bǐ rénli, fēnglì kuài duō le.

Guò jǐtiān yǐhòu Xīng-hàn zhèng tóng biérén zài jiǎbǎnshang sànbù ne, hūrán tīngjian yǒurén shuō, yǐjīng kuài dào Xiàwēiyí le.

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. Once I saw an American movie which showed a naval exercise (maneuver) in the Pacific. There were battle ships, transports and two cruisers.
2. I remember that the combat equipment on those ships was excellent. There were artillery guns, machine guns, rockets, and so on.
3. The life-saving equipment was also very complete. All around the ships, there were life boats and life belts (which) were all very easy to see.
4. That naval maneuver was held in the vicinity of Hawaii. The American Pacific Naval Base is located (there).
5. The entire maneuver was directed by radio. All the boats began to move (act) when the order was given by the naval commander.

L. 19

6. The weather was very good, but the force of the wind on the sea was very strong. As the ships sailed ahead against the wind, the white waves were very beautiful.
7. After sailing for approximately two nautical miles, the cruiser in the front suddenly made a turn and signaled the rest to follow suit.
8. Then the other ships turned. Probably due to the help of a tail wind, they seemed to be sailing faster than just before.
9. Some of the people on the decks of those ships manned the artillery positions, others gazed at the sky with binoculars to see if there were enemy planes approaching.
10. Suddenly we heard the sound of anti-aircraft guns. We looked up to the sky and discovered that there were several enemy bombers circling over the cruiser.
11. One bomber came down in a dive and dropped bombs. We thought that the cruiser unquestionably (undoubtedly) would have to (must) sink.
12. It did not sink. It went on sailing (zhàoyàng--in like manner). Then, because the waves were too big, the cruiser rocked (diānbō) violently.
13. The ships moved farther and farther away and the people on the decks became smaller and smaller. At this point, the movie ended.
14. We saw some more movies. These were international news films which were completely about elections.
15. That was the first time I watched a free and democratic election. I know that everyone in a democratic country, whether man or woman, can vote when he (or she) reaches a certain age.
16. Lately we have seen a lot of movies and as a result, I have spent all the money in my pocket. I have to go to the bank to withdraw a little money.
17. The last time I went to the bank, I saw many children in uniform waiting there for a bus to go visit the submarine base.



18. The children in uniform were all as excited as Columbus was when he discovered the new mainland (The New World).
19. Later on I heard that when those children arrived at the base, they were taken around to see the engine room and the cabins.
20. But one child refused to go down to the engine room for fear that he would have a hard time breathing because of the lack of fresh air in the submarine.

1944

1945

1946

1947

1948

1949

1950

1951

1952

1953

1954

1944

1945

1946

1947

1948

1949

1950

1951

1952



L. 20

670. língshǐ (continued)  
 670.2 zǒnglíngshǐ N: consul-general
671. mǎshàng \* A: immediately  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
672. měi SV: beautiful  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 672.1 měirén N: a beauty, beautiful woman  
 672.2 měilì SV: beautiful; excellent
673. pái V/M: line up/row, line  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
674. bīng \* N: ice  
 674.1 jié bīng VO: freeze, ice up  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 674.2 jiébingdiǎn N: freezing point  
 674.3 dòng bīng VO: freeze, ice up
675. shī SV: wet, damp, moist  
 675.1 nòngshīle RC: dampen, get wet  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 675.2 shīdù N: humidity
676. Sūlián PW: Soviet Union
677. dàshǐ N: ambassador  
 677.1 gōngshǐ N: envoy (head of a legation)  
 677.2 dàshǐguǎn N: embassy
678. dāi V: stay  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 678.1 dāixiāqu RC: stay continuously, stay on  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_

679. dào chù N: everywhere  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
- 679.1 měi chù N: everywhere
680. diào chá V/N: investigate/investigation  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 680.1 Liánbāng Diào chá jú N: F.B.I.
681. céng jīng V-guò Patt: (indicates past experience)  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
682. tuán BF: group; regiment  
 682.1 gù wèn tuán N: advisory group  
 682.2 dài bìǎo tuán N: delegation  
 682.3 tuán zhǎng N: group leader; regimental commander  
 682.4 tuán yuán N: delegation member(s)
683. wěi dà SV: great  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_
684. yí V: doubt, distrust, suspect  
 684.1 huái yí V/SV/N: harbor doubts about, be suspicious of, suspect that/suspicious/suspicion  
 a. \_\_\_\_\_  
 b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 684.2 kě yí SV: suspicious, dubious, questionable, fishy  
 c. \_\_\_\_\_
- 684.3 yí xīn V/N: doubt, mistrust, have one's doubts/doubt, suspicion, mistrust
685. yǒng yuǎn A: eternally, forever, perpetually

685. yǒngyuǎn (continued)

685.1 yǒngjiǔ

SV: eternal, permanent,  
perpetual, lasting

685.2 yǒngyuǎn bù-V

Ph: will never V

NOTES

- (663) a. He wants all of those things--he won't listen to reason.
- (665) a. Last year when I took a boat to England, by coincidence he took the same boat. (Or: What a coincidence that he took the same boat to England that I did last year!)
- b. When I went to his home yesterday he happened to be eating snacks, so I had a few myself.
- c. When I arrived, as luck would have it, he wasn't there.
- (667) a. Please don't yell loudly.
- (671) a. I'll leave immediately.
- (672) a. His daughter is very beautiful.
- (673) a. What's the surname of the student sitting in the first (seat) of the first row?
- (674) a. The water has already frozen over outside.
- (675) a. Don't get your clothes wet.
- b. This room is too damp--I can't stay in it.
- (678) a. He has stayed in the U.S. for five years.
- b. If I had the money I would stay on here.
- (679) a. On the streets of Hong Kong there are people everywhere.
- (680) a. The government is going to investigate to see how many people there are in that province.
- b. Do you know how that investigation turned out?  
(Or: Do you know what the results of that investigation were?)

- (681) a. Have you ever been to China?
- (683) a. Washington was a very great man.
- (684) a. I doubt very much whether he is an American.
- b. He is always suspicious that others are stealing his things.
- c. His things were stolen by someone; I feel his servant is very suspicious.

## II. STORY

### Dào le Měiguó

Xīng-hàn de chuán líkāile Xiàwēiyí, yòu zǒule hǎojítiān. Yǒu yìtiān wǎnshang, chuánshangde wǎnfàn yùbeide tèbié fēngfù. Xīng-hàn tīngjian hěn duō rén shuō, dièrtiān zǎoshang chuán jiu kěyǐ dào Jiùjīnshān le. Tā tīngle zhège xiāoxi, fēicháng xīngfèn. Chīle wǎnfàn, huídao cānglǐ, shōushi shōushi xíngli, jiù tǎngxiāle. Dièrtiān zǎoshang, tiān hái méiliàng ne, jiu tīngjian wàitou yǒu rén jǎngzhe: "Dào Jiùjīnshān le, dào Jiùjīnshān le." Xīng-hàn, mǎshàng qīlái, chuānshang yīfu, jiu wàng jiǎbǎnshang pǎo. Jiǎbǎnshang de rén hěn duō. Nàge shíhou, tiān yòu hēi, wù yòu dà, suǒyǐ yě kànbujiàn shénme, bìngqiě dào chù dōu hěn shí. Xīng-hàn yīnwei méichuān dàyī, suǒyǐ yǒudiǎnr liáng. Tā jìde chuán dào Rìběn de shíhou, tiānqi lěngjǐle. Jiǎbǎnshangde nàge hánshūbiǎo, měitiān dōu zài língdù yìxià. Měitiān chuānzhe dàyī hái juéde lěng. Kěshi zǒule jǐtiān, tiānqi jiu yuè lái yuè nuǎnhuole. Dào le Xiàwēiyí de shíhou, tiānqi nuǎnhuode jiǎnzhí gēn chūntiān yíyàng, suǒyǐ Xīng-hàn

jiu bǎ tā nàjiàn dàyī fàngzai xiāngzilǐ le. Xīng-hàn zhèng yào huídao cānglǐ qù ná, hūrán tīngjian yǒu rén rǎngzhe: "Nǐmen kàn qiántou hěn yuǎn de dìfang yǒu yìpái diàndēng. Nà jiùshi shìjièshang zuì cháng de qiáo." Xīng-hàn wàng qián yí kàn, yīnwei tiān tài hēi, suǒyǐ kàn bujiàn shénme qiáo, zhǐ néng kànjian qiáoshang de diàndēng, xiàng yǒu hǎojīyīnglǐ cháng. Xīng-hàn qīngqīngde shuōle yìshēng; "Zhēn měi, zhēn wěidà." Kěqiǎo tā pángbiānr zhàn zhe yīwèi Měiguó shàngxiào, jiù wèn Xīng-hàn, "Nǐ shì tóu yí cì dào Měiguó lái ma?" Nàwèi Měiguó shàngxiào shì Táiwān Měiguó Jūnshì Gùwèntuán de yīwèi kùwèn. Dièrcì Shìjiè Dàzhàn dǎwánle de shíhou, tā hái zài Zhōngguó Dàlùshang zhùguo. Nàge shíhou Měiguó zhèngfǔ pàile yíge dàibiǎotuán dào Zhōngguó qù, tā jiùshi dàibiǎotuán de yíge tuányuán. Tā zài Zhōngguó Dàlù de shíhou, dàoguó hěn duō dìfang. Yǒu yí cì, yīnwei yào diào chá Zhōngguó xīběi de qíngxíng, tā yíge rén kāile yíliàng jí pǔchē, yìzhí kāidào Zhōngguó gēn Sūlián jiāojiè de dìfang. Tā duì Zhōngguó wèntí fēicháng yǒu xīngqū. Tāmen liǎngge rén tánle yìhuǐr Zhōngguó de qíngxíng, yòu tánle yìhuǐr Měiguó de qíngxíng. Tāmen dōu xīwang shìjièshang néng yǒngyuǎn wéichí hépíng. Nàwèi Měiguó shàngxiào yě céngjīng dàoguó Sūlián. Tā shuō, Sūlián de lǎobǎixìng gēn Měiguó de lǎobǎixìng méiyǒu shénme fēnbie. Xīng-hàn duì tāde huà, yǒude tóngyì, yǒude bùtóngyì. Jiǎbǎnshang de rén tīngshuō chuán dēi dēng diǎnliàng yǐhou



cái néng jìn gǎng, suǒyǐ dōu huídao cānglǐ qùle. Nàge shíhou, Xīng-hàn de xīnlǐ yǒu hěn duō wèntí. Tā juéde jiǎbǎnshang hěn ānjing, kōngqì yě bǐ chuáncānglǐ xīnxian, suǒyǐ yuànyì duō dāi yìhuǐr. Tā kànjian qiánmian qiáoshang de dēng, tā juéde Zhōngguó yě xūyào zhèyàngrde dà qiáo. Tā zài Táiwān de shíhou tīngshuō gòngfěi zài Chángjiāng shàngtou zàole liǎngsānge dà tiěqiáo, kěshi tā duì gòngfěi de xuānchuán hěn huáiyí. Tā yòu xiǎng tā dào Měiguó yǐhòu yídìng kěyǐ xuédào gèng duō xīn zhīshi, kěshi tā pà tāde Yīngwén jīchǔ búgòu hǎo, jiàoguān jiǎngde yěxǔ huì tīngbudǒng. Tā juéde guójiā duì tā tài hǎo le, tā huíguó yǐhòu, yīngdāng hǎohāorde tì kōngjūn fúwù. Nàge shíhou, tiān jiànjiānde liàngle, tā qiántou de nàge dà qiáo yě yuè lái yuè qīngchu le. Qiáo hòutou shì shān, shānshang yǒu hěn duō dà lóu. Xīng-hàn xīnlǐ xiǎng, Měiguó zhēn shì yíge liǎobuqǐ de guójiā. Hūrán tīngjian yǒu rén jiào tāde míngzi, gěi tā yìfēng diànbào. Dǎkāi yíkàn, shì Huáshèngdùn Zhōngguó Dàshìguǎn de kōngjūn wǔguān gěi tā dǎláide. Diànbàooshang shuō, Dàshìguǎn yǐjīng tōngzhī Jiùjīnshān de lǐngshìguǎn, qǐng tāmen pài rén dào chuánshang lái jiē Xīng-hàn tāmen jìge rén le.

### III. TRANSLATION

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, then compare your version with that recorded on the homework tape.

1. I have heard that not too long ago the Soviet Union sent an economic delegation to the China mainland to investigate the Chinese economic situation.

2. Some of the members of the delegation (delegates) had been to China (before); others made their first trip to China on this assignment.
3. As a matter of fact, this economic delegation was an investigation team whose purpose was that they wanted to know how much China produces.
4. There were two units in this investigation group. One was specialized in doing agricultural investigation and the other was doing industrial investigation.
5. When the delegation reached the border between China and the Soviet Union, the Chinese Communist customs officials not only did not check the Soviet delegates, but also prepared a tea party to entertain them.
6. The Soviet embassy also sent an economic attaché to meet the delegation. Furthermore (besides this), this person also chatted in detail with them on the China situation.
7. On the same evening, the Soviet consulate invited the delegation for supper. We heard that a number of Chinese customs personnel were invited to join this gathering.
8. During the meal, a Chinese Communist representative stood up and said a few words of welcome and propagandized (about) how great China was.
9. The main purpose of this economic delegation was to investigate the agricultural and industrial conditions in the Changjiang area.
10. Generally speaking, the Changjiang area is the richest production area in China. The Soviets hoped to go to every little place to make their investigation, and the Chinese Communist government agreed with (to) their plans.
11. The airplane prepared for the Soviet economic investigation group arrived at the People's Airfield in Beijing the following afternoon.
12. The weather forecast for that day was not too accurate. It was originally reported that the temperature would be about forty degrees, but the thermometer stood at the freezing point at three in the afternoon.

13. Some of the delegates felt that Beijing was too cold (for them). So they went by train to the south after a short stay at Beijing.
14. These Russians were quite (very) unreasonable. They propagandized for the Soviet Union after they arrived saying that the Soviet Union was the greatest country on earth.
15. The common people in general were suspicious of the Soviet propaganda but they were not willing to say much.
16. It was said that those Russians lived in the fanciest places (unusually fancy places) wherever they went, and that they ate things ordinary Chinese could not get.
17. Those Russians kept very continuous contact with their embassy and consulates. Of course we know that they reported all the secrets they investigated to the Soviet Union.
18. The Chinese people in general feel that although the Chinese and the Russians call each other comrades, they are indeed not completely equal.
19. Let us think: China is such a beautiful country, it is ridiculous (really unreasonable) to allow the Russians to make a free investigation in China.
20. We have no idea how much longer the Russians will stay in China, but the general public in China feels that the Russians have stayed in China too long.









